

# Auditing and Accounting on AIX

**Comprehensive guide to auditing and accounting your AIX system**

**Step-by-step instructions on auditing your system**

**Find the most effective way to use accounting to track system resources**

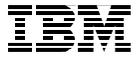


**Laurent Vanel,  
Rosabelle Zapata-Balingit,  
Gonzalo R. Archondo-Callao**

[ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)

**Redbooks**





International Technical Support Organization

**Auditing and Accounting on AIX**

October 2000

**Take Note!**

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information in Appendix C, "Special notices" on page 157.

**First Edition (October 2000)**

This edition applies to AIX Version 4.3 (5765-C34) and subsequent releases running on an RS/6000 server.

Comments may be addressed to:

IBM Corporation, International Technical Support Organization  
Dept. JN9B Building 003 Internal Zip 2834  
11400 Burnet Road  
Austin, Texas 78758-3493

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a non-exclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

**© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2000. All rights reserved.**

Note to U.S Government Users – Documentation related to restricted rights – Use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

---

# Contents

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>Figures</b> .....                          | vii |
| <b>Tables</b> .....                           | ix  |
| <b>Preface</b> .....                          | .xi |
| The team that wrote this redbook .....        | .xi |
| Comments welcome .....                        | xii |
| <b>Chapter 1. Introduction</b> .....          | 1   |
| 1.1 Definitions .....                         | 1   |
| 1.1.1 Auditing .....                          | 1   |
| 1.1.2 Accounting .....                        | 1   |
| 1.2 Do you really need the full report? ..... | 2   |
| 1.2.1 The ps command .....                    | 2   |
| 1.2.2 sar command .....                       | 2   |
| 1.2.3 tprof command .....                     | 3   |
| <b>Chapter 2. Auditing on AIX</b> .....       | 5   |
| 2.1 Auditing concepts .....                   | 5   |
| 2.1.1 General .....                           | 5   |
| 2.1.2 Data collection method .....            | 7   |
| 2.1.3 Events and objects .....                | 10  |
| 2.1.4 Audit commands .....                    | 13  |
| 2.2 Configuration files .....                 | 14  |
| 2.2.1 The config file .....                   | 14  |
| 2.2.2 The oconfig file .....                  | 18  |
| 2.2.3 The events file .....                   | 18  |
| 2.2.4 The objects file .....                  | 19  |
| 2.2.5 The bincmds file .....                  | 20  |
| 2.2.6 The streamcmds file .....               | 21  |
| 2.3 How to set up auditing .....              | 22  |
| 2.3.1 BIN mode auditing .....                 | 23  |
| 2.3.2 STREAM mode auditing .....              | 24  |
| 2.3.3 Events .....                            | 24  |
| 2.3.4 Objects .....                           | 29  |
| 2.4 Advanced auditing setup .....             | 30  |
| 2.5 Understanding the output .....            | 32  |
| 2.5.1 Event auditing - BIN mode .....         | 33  |
| 2.5.2 Event auditing - STREAM mode .....      | 35  |
| 2.5.3 Object auditing - STREAM mode .....     | 37  |
| 2.5.4 Output for advance auditing setup ..... | 40  |

|   |  |           |
|---|--|-----------|
| 2.6   | More on the events file . . . . .              | 42        |
| 2.7   | Exceptions . . . . .                           | 44        |
| 2.8   | Common problems with auditing . . . . .        | 45        |
| 2.9   | Sizing considerations . . . . .                | 47        |
| 2.9.1   | Disk space . . . . .                           | 47        |
| 2.9.2   | Performance . . . . .                          | 48        |
| <b>Chapter 3. Accounting on AIX . . . . .</b> |  | <b>49</b> |
| 3.1   | Inside accounting . . . . .                    | 49        |
| 3.1.1   | Accounting resources . . . . .                 | 49        |
| 3.1.2   | Billing periods . . . . .                      | 50        |
| 3.1.3   | Accounting processes . . . . .                 | 50        |
| 3.1.4   | Connection accounting . . . . .                | 51        |
| 3.1.5   | Process accounting . . . . .                   | 53        |
| 3.1.6   | Disk accounting . . . . .                      | 55        |
| 3.1.7   | Queue accounting . . . . .                     | 56        |
| 3.1.8   | Consolidation of the accounting data . . . . . | 57        |
| 3.1.9   | Monthly accounting . . . . .                   | 63        |
| 3.2   | Setting up accounting . . . . .                | 64        |
| 3.2.1   | Installing the fileset . . . . .               | 65        |
| 3.2.2   | Setting up the environment . . . . .           | 66        |
| 3.2.3   | Creating the working directories . . . . .     | 67        |
| 3.2.4   | Updating crontab entries . . . . .             | 67        |
| 3.2.5   | Setting up connection accounting . . . . .     | 68        |
| 3.2.6   | Setting up process accounting . . . . .        | 69        |
| 3.2.7   | Setting up disk accounting . . . . .           | 70        |
| 3.2.8   | Setting up queue accounting . . . . .          | 72        |
| 3.2.9   | Defining the billing periods . . . . .         | 76        |
| 3.2.10  | Setting up daily accounting . . . . .          | 78        |
| 3.2.11  | Setting up monthly accounting . . . . .        | 78        |
| 3.3   | Reading the accounting files . . . . .         | 78        |
| 3.3.1   | The /var/adm directory . . . . .               | 80        |
| 3.3.2   | The nite subdirectory . . . . .                | 91        |
| 3.3.3   | The sum subdirectory . . . . .                 | 99        |
| 3.3.4   | The fiscal subdirectory . . . . .              | 101       |
| 3.4   | Troubleshooting . . . . .                      | 101       |
| 3.4.1   | Detecting errors . . . . .                     | 101       |
| 3.4.2   | Fixing file permissions . . . . .              | 103       |
| 3.4.3   | Fixing the wtmp files . . . . .                | 103       |
| 3.4.4   | Fixing the tacct files . . . . .               | 104       |
| 3.4.5   | Restarting runacct . . . . .                   | 104       |
| 3.5   | Sizing considerations . . . . .                | 106       |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>Chapter 4. Accounting on the SP</b> .....                        | 109 |
| 4.1 Accounting with PSSP .....                                      | 109 |
| 4.1.1 Setting up PSSP accounting .....                              | 110 |
| 4.1.2 The output files .....  | 117 |
| 4.2 Accounting using LoadLeveler .....                              | 122 |
| 4.2.1 The accounting data .....                                     | 122 |
| 4.2.2 The history file .....  | 123 |
| 4.2.3 Setting up accounting .....                                   | 125 |
| 4.2.4 Extracting accounting information .....                       | 126 |
| <b>Chapter 5. Third-party accounting solutions</b> .....            | 129 |
| 5.1 COSchargeback .....   | 129 |
| 5.1.1 Overview .....  | 130 |
| 5.1.2 Features .....  | 130 |
| 5.1.3 Chargeback software components .....                          | 131 |
| 5.2 UNISOL® JobAcct™ .....  | 133 |
| 5.2.1 Overview .....  | 134 |
| 5.2.2 Oracle database accounting .....                              | 135 |
| 5.2.3 UNISOL JobAcct user interface .....                           | 136 |
| 5.2.4 UNISOL JobAcct reports .....                                  | 136 |
| 5.2.5 Performance monitoring .....                                  | 139 |
| 5.3 CIMS for UNIX .....   | 139 |
| 5.3.1 Overview .....  | 140 |
| 5.3.2 Benefits .....  | 140 |
| 5.3.3 Sample reporting .....  | 141 |
| <b>Appendix A. Audit events</b> .....                               | 143 |
| <b>Appendix B. Internal structure of the accounting files</b> ..... | 153 |
| B.1 The tacct file .....  | 153 |
| B.2 The wtmp file .....   | 153 |
| B.3 The pacct file .....  | 154 |
| B.4 The qacct file .....  | 155 |
| B.5 The cms file .....  | 155 |
| <b>Appendix C. Special notices</b> .....                            | 157 |
| <b>Appendix D. Related publications</b> .....                       | 161 |
| D.1 IBM Redbooks .....  | 161 |
| D.2 IBM Redbooks collections .....                                  | 161 |
| D.3 Other resources .....   | 161 |
| D.4 Referenced Web sites .....                                      | 162 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>How to get IBM Redbooks</b> .....    | 163 |
| IBM Redbooks fax order form .....       | 164 |
| <b>Abbreviations and acronyms</b> ..... | 165 |
| <b>Index</b> .....                      | 171 |
| <b>IBM Redbooks review</b> .....        | 181 |

---

## Figures

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 1. General overview . . . . .   | 7   |
| 2. Data collection in BIN mode . . . . .                                | 8   |
| 3. Data collection in STREAM mode . . . . .                             | 9   |
| 4. WSM user interface - Select a user . . . . .                         | 26  |
| 5. WSM user interface - Select a class for auditing . . . . .           | 27  |
| 6. SMIT user interface - Select a user name . . . . .                   | 27  |
| 7. SMIT user interface - AUDIT class . . . . .                          | 28  |
| 8. SMIT user interface - Select the class you want for a user . . . . . | 28  |
| 9. The total accounting record (tacct) . . . . .                        | 49  |
| 10. Overall view of the usage gathering process . . . . .               | 51  |
| 11. Gathering of connection accounting data . . . . .                   | 53  |
| 12. Gathering of process accounting data . . . . .                      | 54  |
| 13. Gathering of disk accounting data (fast mode) . . . . .             | 55  |
| 14. Gathering of disk accounting data (slow mode) . . . . .             | 56  |
| 15. Generation of the /var/adm/acct/nite/daytacct file . . . . .        | 61  |
| 16. Generation of the sum directory files . . . . .                     | 62  |
| 17. Generation of the fiscal subdirectory files . . . . .               | 64  |
| 18. Selecting to install additional software through WebSM . . . . .    | 65  |
| 19. Selecting the software to be installed . . . . .                    | 66  |
| 20. Configuring disk accounting through WebSM . . . . .                 | 71  |
| 21. Specifying the queue accounting file . . . . .                      | 73  |
| 22. Selecting printer type through SMIT . . . . .                       | 76  |
| 23. UNISOL JobAcct management menu . . . . .                            | 136 |
| 24. UNISOL JobAcct Summary Reports . . . . .                            | 138 |
| 25. UNISOL JobAcct Chargeback Report . . . . .                          | 138 |
| 26. Example of the Node Utilization by node report . . . . .            | 141 |
| 27. Example of the charges by specific node report . . . . .            | 142 |



## Tables

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 1. Audit record generated by the ls command using event auditing . . . . . | 10  |
| 2. Audit event formatting information . . . . .                            | 43  |
| 3. Sample formatting output. . . . .                                       | 43  |
| 4. Sample size of each event with header information . . . . .             | 48  |
| 5. System V accounting commands. . . . .                                   | 79  |
| 6. BSD accounting commands. . . . .  | 80  |
| 7. Known events in AIX 4.3.3. . . . .                                      | 143 |

**x** Auditing and Accounting on AIX

---

## Preface

Auditing and Accounting on AIX is your comprehensive guide to setting up, maintaining, and troubleshooting the advanced auditing and accounting features on your AIX systems. Generously illustrated instructions will guide you through the steps to develop, monitor, troubleshoot, and optimize best practices for auditing and accounting in your environment.

In this redbook, you will find an overview of what auditing and accounting can do for you, how to set up an auditing system, procedures for creating the right accounting system for your environment, and a summary of available third-party accounting systems that will plug into the AIX suite. A chapter specific to SP solutions is provided.

You will also be able to decide how much accounting and auditing you need to do on your system, how to size the subsystems to handle your requirements, and a list of rules of thumb to help prevent common mistakes and fix what may have already gone wrong.

This redbook is useful for system administrators, system security officers, companies needing to bill clients for system resource use, and any others looking for a flexible system to monitor system resources.

---

### The team that wrote this redbook

This redbook was produced by a team of specialists from around the world working at the International Technical Support Organization, Austin Center.

**Laurent Vanel** is an AIX and RS/6000 specialist at the International Technical Support Organization, Austin Center. Before joining the ITSO three years ago, Laurent Vanel was working in the French RS/6000 Technical Center in Paris, where he conducted benchmarks and presentations for AIX and RS/6000 solutions.

**Rosabelle Zapata-Balingit** is an AIX IT specialist in the Philippines. She holds a Bachelor of Science degree in Computer Engineering from Adamson University, Manila. She joined IBM in 1996 as an RS/6000 Systems Service Representative. She has seven years of experience in AIX. Her areas of expertise include AIX, HACMP, and SP.

**Gonzalo R. Archondo-Callao** is a systems administrator and manager of the High-Performance Computing Group at the Computing Center of the Federal University of Rio de Janeiro (NCE-UFRJ) in Brazil. He also teaches Operating

Systems classes at UFRJ. He has 15 years of experience with UNIX systems and has been working with the RS/6000 SP and AIX since 1996. His areas of expertise include UNIX systems, Windows NT, TCP/IP, and network security. He holds an M.Sc. degree in computer science from the University of California, Los Angeles.

Thanks to the following people for their invaluable contributions to this project:

Troy Bollinger  
IBM Austin

Vani Ramagiri  
IBM Austin

Scott Vetter  
IBM Austin

Wade Wallace  
International Technical Support Organization, Austin Center

---

## Comments welcome

Your comments are important to us!

We want our redbooks to be as helpful as possible. Please send us your comments about this or other redbooks in one of the following ways:

- Fax the evaluation form found in “IBM Redbooks review” on page 181 to the fax number shown on the form.
- Use the online evaluation form found at [ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)
- Send your comments in an Internet note to [redbook@us.ibm.com](mailto:redbook@us.ibm.com)

---

## Chapter 1. Introduction

This first chapter introduces the definitions of accounting and auditing. It also gives a brief refresher on some elementary commands that you might want to run before setting up either accounting or auditing.

This book is not about performance troubleshooting. If you are interested in this subject, we recommend you read *Understanding IBM RS/6000 Performance and Sizing*, SG24-4810.

---

### 1.1 Definitions

Let's start with the definitions of the accounting and auditing utilities.

#### 1.1.1 Auditing

The auditing subsystem provides the means to record security-related information and to alert system administrators of potential and actual violations of the system security policy. The information collected by auditing includes: the name of the auditable event, the status (success or failure) of the event, and any additional event-specific information related to security auditing.

#### 1.1.2 Accounting

The accounting system utility allows you to collect and report on individual and group use of various system resources.

This accounting information can be used to bill users for the system resources they utilize, and to monitor selected aspects of the system's operation. To assist with billing, the accounting system provides the resource-usage totals defined by members of the adm group, and, if the `chargefee` command is included, factors in the billing fee.

The accounting system also provides data to assess the adequacy of current resource assignments, set resource limits and quotas, forecast future needs, and order supplies for printers and other devices.

The following information should help you understand how to implement the accounting utility in your system:

- Collecting and Reporting System Data
- Collecting Accounting Data
- Reporting Accounting Data

- Accounting Commands
- Accounting Files

---

## 1.2 Do you really need the full report?

If your problem is not permanent, and you just want to know at one point what is going on your system, you do not need to set up and start the auditing or accounting subsystems. You might want to instead consider running some elementary commands first, such as `ps`, `sar`, or `top`.

### 1.2.1 The `ps` command

The `ps` command writes the current status of active processes and (if the `-m` flag is given) associated kernel threads to standard output. Note that while the `-m` flag displays threads associated with processes using extra lines, you must use the `-o` flag with the `THREAD` field specifier to display extra thread-related columns.

Without flags, the `ps` command displays information about the current workstation. The `-f`, `-o`, `l`, `-l`, `s`, `u`, and `v` flags only determine how much information is provided about a process; they do not determine which processes are listed. The `l`, `s`, `u`, and `v` flags are mutually exclusive.

With the `-o` flag, the `ps` command examines memory or the paging area and determines what the command name and parameters were when the process was created. If the `ps` command cannot find this information, the command name stored in the kernel is displayed in square brackets.

### 1.2.2 `sar` command

The `sar` command writes to standard output the contents of selected cumulative activity counters in the operating system. The accounting system, based on the values in the `Number` and `Interval` parameters, writes information the specified number of times spaced at the specified intervals in seconds. The default sampling interval for the `Number` parameter is 1 second. The collected data can also be saved in the file specified by the `-o` File flag.

The `sar` command also extracts and writes to standard output records previously saved in a file. This file can be either the one specified by the `-f` flag or, by default, the standard system activity daily data file (the `/var/adm/sa/sadd` file), where the `dd` parameter indicates the current day.

Without the `-P` flag, the `sar` command reports system-wide (global among all processors) statistics, which are calculated as averages for values expressed as percentages, and as sums otherwise. If the `-P` flag is given, the `sar` command reports activity which relates to the specified processor or processors. If `-P ALL` is given, the `sar` command reports statistics for each individual processor, followed by system-wide statistics.

You can select information about specific system activities using flags. Not specifying any flags selects only system unit activity. Specifying the `-A` flag selects all activities.

The default version of the `sar` command (CPU utilization report) might be one of the first facilities the user runs to begin system activity investigation, because it monitors major system resources. If CPU utilization is near 100 percent (user + system), the workload sampled is CPU-bound. If a considerable percentage of time is spent in I/O wait, it implies that CPU execution is blocked waiting for disk I/O. The I/O may be required file accesses or it may be I/O associated with paging due to a lack of sufficient memory.

### 1.2.3 tprof command

The `tprof` command reports CPU usage for individual programs and the system as a whole. This command is a useful tool for anyone with a C or FORTRAN program that might be CPU-bound, and who wants to know which sections of this program are using the CPU the most. The `tprof` command also reports the fraction of time the CPU is idle. These reports can be useful in determining CPU usage (in a global sense).

The `tprof` command specifies the user program to be profiled, executes the user program, and then produces a set of files containing reports. The user specifies the name of the program to be profiled, or alternatively, the name of the program to be profiled and a command line to be executed. Both the Program and Command variables must be executable.

In the AIX operating system, an interrupt occurs periodically to allow a "housekeeping" kernel routine to run. This housekeeping occurs 100 times per second. When the `tprof` command is invoked, the housekeeping kernel routine records the process ID and the address of the instruction executing when the interrupt occurred. With both the instruction address and process ID, the `tprof` analysis routines can charge CPU time to processes and threads, to subprograms, and even to source lines of programs. Charging CPU time to source program lines is called microprofiling.

More information on these commands are available from the AIX base documentation.

---

## Chapter 2. Auditing on AIX

An audit is defined as an examination of a group, individual account, or activity. Thus, the auditing subsystem provides a means of tracing and recording what is happening on your system.

By default, auditing is not activated in AIX. When you start the audit subsystem, it gathers information depending on your configuration file. It may be unnecessary for you to start auditing if you just let the files sit in your busy system. What is important is for you to be able to interpret an auditing record. Depending on your environment, it may or may not be necessary for auditing to run every time. It is a decision you have to make.

---

### 2.1 Auditing concepts

This section will briefly describe how auditing works, from reading the configuration file to recording audit information.

#### 2.1.1 General

When you start the auditing process, a configuration file is read. This file contains information, such as mode, classes, events, objects, and users.

**Mode:** This message tells you the type of data collection you want to use. The type can be binary mode, which we will cover in Section 2.1.2.1, “BIN mode” on page 7, and/or stream mode, which we will cover in detail in Section 2.1.2.2, “STREAM mode” on page 9.

Binary mode is useful when you plan to store records on a long term basis.

Stream mode is useful when you want to do immediate processing that reads data as it is processed.

You can choose BIN mode, STREAM mode, or you can choose both at the same time.

**Events:** Events are system-defined activity. Here are two examples:

- The USER\_SU event gives you information about whether a user tries to su to another user, and the PASSWORD\_Change event will give you information if a password has been changed. Both of these events can be grouped in a class called general.
- The CRON\_Start event gives you information about whether a cron job has started, and the CRON\_Finish event will give you

information about whether a cron job has just finished running. Both of these events can be grouped in a class called cron.

**Classes:** Classes define groups of events. You can have one or more events in a class. For example, consider an event called USER\_SU, which checks if a user does an su to another user. There is also an event called PASSWORD\_Change, which checks if there is a process that changes the password of a user. Since both events are usually done in the system, both events can be grouped in a class called general. Class names are arbitrary, and you can define any class name for certain group of events.

**Objects:** When one speaks of auditing objects, this means files; so, auditing objects means auditing files. Read, write, and execute of a file can be audited through audit objects.

**Users:** User enables you to define what class you want to audit for a specific user. You can audit one or more classes per user. For example, you can audit user joe for every general and cron group of events while you only audit the general class for user bob.

After every event or objects are triggered, an audit record is generated. This is the most exciting part of the story. After gathering a handful of information, you now have a chance to interpret and make use of what audit record you have. The name of the file to which audit records are written depends on the audit selection mode. Figure 1 on page 7 gives you an overall overview of how auditing works.

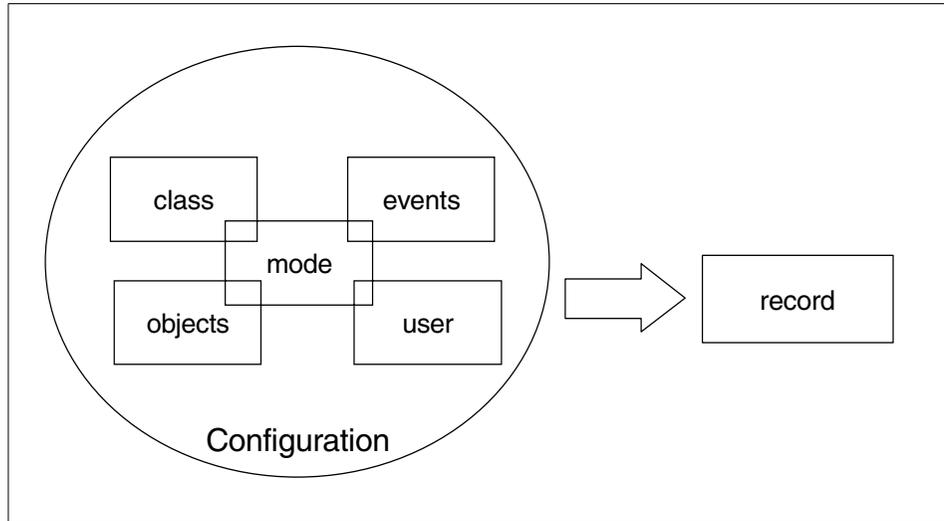


Figure 1. General overview

## 2.1.2 Data collection method

There are two modes of operation for auditing: BIN and STREAM. The type of data collection method depends on how you will use the data. If you plan to store them on a long-term basis, select BIN mode. If you want to read the data as it is collected, choose STREAM mode. If you want long-term storage and immediate processing, select both.

### 2.1.2.1 BIN mode

BIN mode is for binary data collection. Figure 2 on page 8 shows bin mode operation.

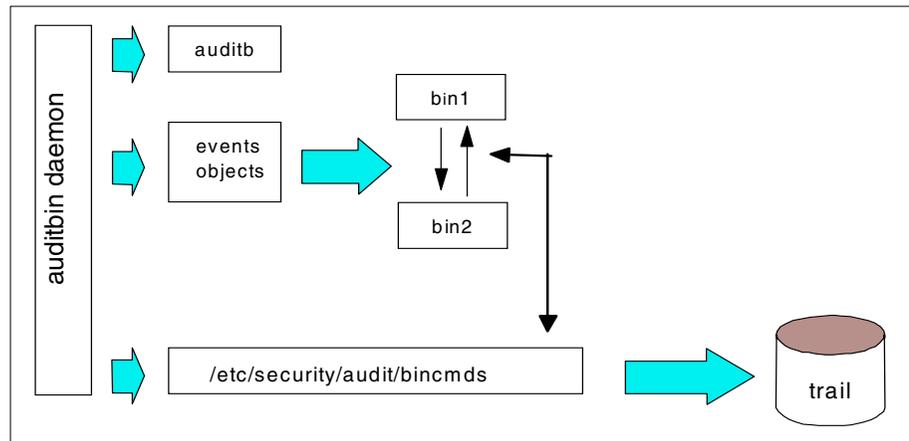


Figure 2. Data collection in BIN mode

Once you start the audit process in binary mode, it executes the file `/usr/sbin/auditbin`. This creates the auditbin daemon, which manages binary audit information, and creates an active indicator that BIN auditing is running, which is an `auditb` file of zero length. The auditbin daemon also manages `bin1` and `bin2`, temporary bin files that alternately collect audit event data.

As audit events and objects occurs, the kernel writes a record to a bin file. First it writes to `/audit/bin1`; if `bin1` gets full, the kernel goes to `/audit/bin2`. When `/audit/bin2` gets full, the kernel goes back to `/audit/bin1`. The size of the bin file is determined by the `binsize` parameter in `/etc/security/audit/config` (in bytes). When a bin file is full, the auditbin daemon reads the `/etc/security/audit/bincmds` file. Each line of this file contains one or more commands with input and output that can be piped together or redirected. The auditbin daemon searches each command for the `$bin` string and the `$trail` string, and substitutes the path names of the current bin file and the system trail file.

The auditbin daemon ensures that each command encounters each bin at least once, but does not synchronize access to the bins. When all commands have run, the bin file is ready to collect more audit records.

You can also suspend BIN auditing at a given time and resume it afterwards. Once you resume auditing, the auditbin daemon continues writing to the bin file used before suspending it.

The accumulated data written into `/audit/trail` must be processed by the `auditpr` command to make it readable.

```
#auditpr -v < /audit/trail
```

### 2.1.2.2 STREAM mode

The STREAM mode of auditing allows you to read the audit record as it is processed. Unlike BIN mode, which is used to keep records on a long-term period, this mode zeroes out the `stream.out` file as the audit is started by the `audit start` command. Figure 3 on page 9 shows what happens from the time the audit command is started to the time data is recorded.

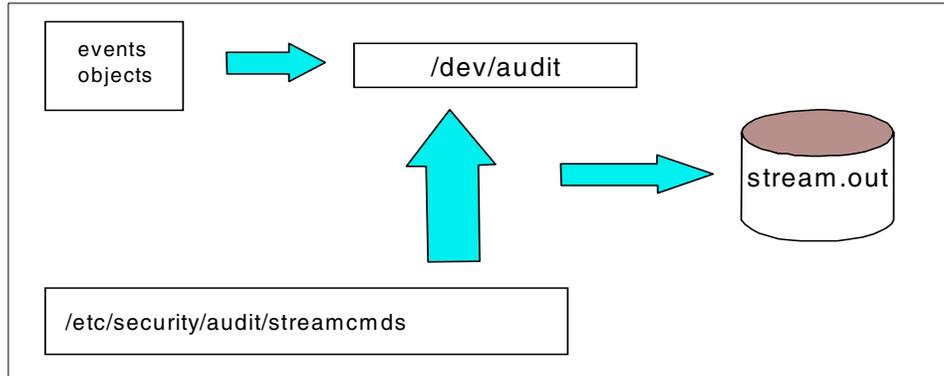


Figure 3. Data collection in STREAM mode

As audit events and objects occurs, data is written to `/dev/audit`, which is the audit device. The `auditstream` command in the `/etc/security/audit/streamcmds` file reads audit records from the audit device, and writes the record to the standard output in binary format. There is also an `auditpr` command in the same file that is used to format the output and writes to the file `/audit/stream.out`. In this mode, data is being processed as it is collected.

The STREAM mode writes audit records in a circular buffer in memory and zeroes out the audit record (which is `stream.out`) as you start auditing.

You can continuously view the record from `stream.out` with the following command:

```
#tail -f /audit/stream.out
```

You can also temporarily suspend STREAM auditing and resume it afterwards.

Once you start auditing, an audit directory is automatically created for you. If, by any chance, this directory gets deleted, it will be created after the `audit start` command. If there is an ordinary file called `audit`, you must delete or rename it, since no two files can exist in the same location; otherwise, `audit start` will fail. Since audit records can produce large amounts of data, and since the audit directory is created in the root (/) filesystem, it is a good idea for you to create a separate file system for audit. There is a good reason to have a separate file system; if you do not monitor the audit record file while it is in the root system, it will consume all the resources of the root file system. Note that the size of the audit file system depends on the amount of data you have.

To create an audit file system you can use this command:

```
#crfs -v jfs -g {volume group name} -m /audit -A yes -a size=8192
```

### 2.1.3 Events and objects

Auditing events are generally defined at a system call level. A single operation of a command, such as `ls`, will record a log similar to Table 1.

Table 1. Audit record generated by the `ls` command using event auditing

| Event        | Login | Status | Date/Time                | Command |
|--------------|-------|--------|--------------------------|---------|
| PROC_Create  | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ksh     |
| FILE_Close   | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ksh     |
| FILE_Open    | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ksh     |
| FILE_Read    | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ksh     |
| FILE_Close   | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ksh     |
| PROC_Execute | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ls      |
| FILE_Open    | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ls      |
| FILE_Close   | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ls      |
| FILE_Write   | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ls      |
| FILE_Close   | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ls      |
| PROC_Delete  | root  | OK     | Fri Jun 09 11:02:41 2000 | ls      |

You can also use the `watch` command to observe a program. This command observes all the processes that are created while the program runs, including any child process. The `watch` command continues until all processes exit, including the process it created, in order to observe all the events that occur.

The `watch ls` command will give you an output similar to the next two displays:

```
#watch ls - display 1 of 2

filea
fileb
filec
**** WATCH ****
event      login   status  time           command
-----
AUD_Proc   root    OK       Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 watch
  pid: 0 cmd: 4
**** WATCH ****
event      login   status  time           command
-----
PROC_SetUserIDs root    OK       Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 watch
  effect: 0, real: 0, saved: -1, login: -1
**** WATCH ****
event      login   status  time           command
-----
TCB_Exec   root    OK       Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 watch
  filename: /usr/bin/ls
**** WATCH ****
event      login   status  time           command
-----
PROC_Execute root    OK       Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
  euid: 0 egid: 0 epriv: ffffffff:ffffffff name /usr/bin/ls
**** WATCH ****
event      login   status  time           command
-----
PROC_Load   root    OK       Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
  file: /usr/lib/nls/loc/en_US
**** WATCH ****
event      login   status  time           command
-----
PROC_LoadMember root    OK       Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
  file: /usr/lib/lib18n.a, member: shr.o
**** WATCH ****
event      login   status  time           command
-----
FILE_Accessx root    OK       Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
  mode: 0, who: 1, path: /usr/lib/nls/msg/en_US/ls.cat
**** WATCH ****
event      login   status  time           command
-----
FILE_Stat   root    OK       Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
  cmd: 9 filename: .
**** WATCH ****
event      login   status  time           command
-----
FILE_Stat   root    OK       Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
  cmd: 0 filename: .
```

```

#watch ls - display 2 of 2

**** WATCH ****
event      login    status   time                command
-----
FILE_Open  root     OK        Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
          flags: 0 mode: 0 fd: 4 filename .
**** WATCH ****
event      login    status   time                command
-----
FILE_Close root     OK        Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
          file descriptor = 4
**** WATCH ****
event      login    status   time                command
-----
FILE_Write root     OK        Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
          file descriptor = 1
**** WATCH ****
event      login    status   time                command
-----
          FILE_Close  root     OK        Wed Jun 21 18:09:05 2000 ls
          file descriptor = 1
** child process exiting: 18578
** all processes have exited

```

For the `watch` command to work, the auditing subsystem must not be enabled.

Auditing all possible events can produce a large amount of data. Imagine if you audited everything; you would have tons of information with you! By using audit control, you can select the events to be recorded by customizing the configuration file.

Event auditing is ALWAYS associated with a user ID. For example, you can audit user joe for general class, and you can audit user bob for both general and cron classes. It may not be necessary for you to audit all users; not all user names have audit events.

Auditing objects refers to individual files that will be monitored. Objects are NOT associated with user IDs. Audit records are generated whenever an audit object is referenced by ANY user, including root. You do not need to define any user for object auditing.

To customize audit objects, refer to the file `/etc/security/audit/objects`. This contains files that record information when there is a read, write, or execute operation.

## 2.1.4 Audit commands

The `audit` command controls system auditing. It can be invoked to start, shutdown, suspend, resume, and query auditing. There are five parameters for the `audit` command:

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>audit start</code>    | This command is used to activate system auditing. This creates a process called <code>auditbin</code> , and an <code>auditb</code> file in the <code>audit</code> directory, which is used for BIN mode. It also creates a process called <code>auditstream</code> , and sets the <code>stream.out</code> file to zero length, which is used for STREAM mode. |
| <code>audit shutdown</code> | This command resets the audit subsystem, processes final BIN records (appends whatever is in the temporary bin file to the record trail file), and removes the <code>/audit/auditb</code> file. This is used as an active indicator by the audit BIN module.  |
| <code>audit off</code>      | This command temporarily suspends auditing.   |
| <code>audit on</code>       | This command resumes auditing after the <code>audit off</code> command. This is NOT a substitute for the <code>audit start</code> command.  |
| <code>audit query</code>    | This command displays the status of the audit subsystem. The Parent ID (PID) of the BIN process refers to <code>auditbin</code> .   |

To start auditing, you have to use the `audit start` command, NOT the `audit on` command. The `audit on` command, without the `audit start` command, gives you a zero return value. This means that the command ran successfully but will not record audit information. This is true for both data collection methods. If the subsystem is confused, or you got confused, you can do either of the following:

- If you used BIN mode, run the `audit shutdown` command to write whatever is in the temporary bin file to the trail file; then, issue the `audit start` command.
- If you used STREAM mode, use the `audit shutdown` command, and copy `stream.out` to your directory. The reason for this action is because when you start auditing, it will set `stream.out` to zero, and you might want to save the data for your own record. After this, you can issue the `audit start` command.
- Issue the `audit shutdown` command, and reset everything by deleting all the files in the `audit` directory (`/audit`). Do not forget to save all files that you might use later, and then issue the `audit start` command.

Auditing can be started automatically at system startup. You can add the following line in the `/etc/rc` file, before the line `dspmsg rc.cat 5 'Multi-user initialization completed'`

```
/usr/sbin/audit start
```

or you can add this line in `/etc/inittab`:

```
audit:2:once:/usr/sbin/audit start 2>&1 > /dev/console
```

To stop auditing properly, add the following line to `/usr/sbin/shutdown`:

```
/usr/sbin/audit shutdown
```

**Note**

If you do not stop auditing properly and you reboot the system, the `auditb` file will not be deleted. In this case, after the reboot, the `auditb` file can become a false indicator that BIN auditing is running.

---

## 2.2 Configuration files

All auditing configuration files are located in the `/etc/security/audit` directory. This is part of the base operating system run time environment security fileset(`bos.rte.security`). By default, auditing is not activated in AIX.

There are six ASCII files in this directory: `config`, `oconfig`, `events`, `objects`, `bincmds`, and `streamcmds`.

### 2.2.1 The config file

The `config` file contains audit system configuration information. It contains five major stanzas. A description of each stanza follows.

- **Start** - This tells you the type of data collection method you want to use: BIN or STREAM. To turn on BIN auditing, specify `on` after the line `binmode`; otherwise, specify `off` after the same line. For stream mode, use the `streammode` parameter, and do the same as in `binmode`. You can turn on both methods at the same time.

The next display shows an example of the `config` file. The `start` stanza is highlighted.

```

config file display 1 of 2
#more /etc/security/audit/config

start:
  binmode = on
  streammode = off

bin:
  trail = /audit/trail
  bin1 = /audit/bin1
  bin2 = /audit/bin2
  binsize = 10240
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/bincmds

stream:
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/streamcmds

```

- **BIN** - This defines the binary mode files. This gives the location of the temporary files, such as bin1 and bin2. This also gives the location of your audit record trail file and the pathname of the `backend` program command. It also includes the `binsize` parameter value, which indicates the size of the temporary bin file in bytes, before it switches to the other bin file. The `cmds` parameter gives the full pathname of the audit backend program, which is called by the `auditbin` process.

The next display shows an example of the config file. The binary stanza is highlighted.

```

config file display 1 of 2
#more /etc/security/audit/config

start:
  binmode = on
  streammode = off

bin:
  trail = /audit/trail
  bin1 = /audit/bin1
  bin2 = /audit/bin2
  binsize = 10240
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/bincmds

stream:
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/streamcmds

```

- **STREAM** - This stanza contains attributes that the `audit start` command uses to set up initial stream mode auditing. The `cmds` parameter gives the full pathname of the file, which contains commands executed during initialization of the audit system.

The next display shows an example of the config file. The stream stanza is highlighted.

```
config file display 1 of 2
#more /etc/security/audit/config

start:
  binmode = on
  streammode = off

bin:
  trail = /audit/trail
  bin1 = /audit/bin1
  bin2 = /audit/bin2
  binsize = 10240
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/bincmds

stream:
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/streamcmds
```

- **Classes** - This stanza defines sets of audit events. By default, the following classes are defined:

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| general | Refers to general commands, such as user su and password change.   |
| objects | Refers to files. Read or write from /etc/security/passwd. Writes to other security files, such as environ, group, limits, login.cfg, user, and config file.            |
| SRC     | Refers to the system resource controller(SRC) activity, such as the start and stop of SRC. This also includes adding, changing, and deleting a subsystem or subserver. |
| kernel  | Refers to kernel related activities.   |
| files   | Filesystem related events. This includes system calls, such as: read, write, open, close, link, unlink, rename, change ownership, change mode, and so forth.           |
| svipc   | System V Inter Process Communication related events. This includes shared memory, semaphores, system message exchange, and so forth.                                   |
| mail    | Refers to mail exchange. This includes mail-related activities, such as receive, write, and send.  |
| cron    | Refers to cron related activities, such as start, stop, add, and delete.   |
| tcpip   | Refers to tcpip user level, such as config, route, connect, access, data in, data out, and so forth. It also includes  |

tcPIP kernel level, such as tcp socket, socketpair, close, listen bind, connect, send, receive, and so forth.

lvm Refers to the logical volume manager, such as add, delete, extend, reduce, setup, quorum, create volume group, delete volume group, varyoffvg, varyonvg, and so forth.

Only 32 audit classes are supported. One class is implicitly defined by the system to include all audit events (ALL). You should not attempt to define more than 31 audit classes.

The next display shows an example of the config file. The class stanza is highlighted.

```
config file display 2 of 2
#more /etc/security/audit/config

classes:
  general = USER_SU,PASSWORD_Change,FILE_Unlink,FILE_Link,FILE_Rename,FS_Chdir,.....
  objects = S_ENVIRON_WRITE,S_GROUP_WRITE,S_LLIMITS_WRITE,S_LOGIN_WRITE,.....
  SRC = SRC_Start,SRC_Stop,SRC_Addssys,SRC_Chssys,SRC_Delssys,SRC_Addserver,.....
  kernel = PROC_Create,PROC_Delete,PROC_Execute,PROC_RealUID,PROC_AuditID,.....
  files = FILE_Open,FILE_Read,FILE_Write,FILE_Close,FILE_Link,FILE_Unlink,.....
  svipc = MSG_Create,MSG_Read,MSG_Write,MSG_Delete,MSG_Owner,MSG_Mode,.....
  mail = SENDMAIL_Config,SENDMAIL_ToFile
  cron = AT_JobAdd,AT_JobRemove,CRON_JobAdd,CRON_JobRemove,CRON_Start,CRON_Finish
  tcPIP = TCPIP_config,TCPIP_host_id,TCPIP_route,TCPIP_connect,.....
  lvm = LVM_AddLV,LVM_KDeleteLV,LVM_ExtendLV<LVM_ReduceLV,.....

users:
  root = general
  joe = general,files
  bob = files,cron
```

- Users - This stanza defines, for a given user, the audit class to be audited. Each user name should be defined in the system, and each audit class should be defined in the config file classes stanza. By default, only the root user with general class is defined.

The next display shows an example of the config file. The users stanza is highlighted.

```

config file display 2 of 2

classes:
  general = USER_SU,PASSWORD_Change,FILE_Unlink,FILE_Link,FILE_Rename,FS_Chdir,.....
  objects = S_ENVIRON_WRITE,S_GROUP_WRITE,S_LILITS_WRITE,S_LOGIN_WRITE,.....
  SRC = SRC_Start,SRC_Stop,SRC_Addssys,SRC_Chssys,SRC_Delssys,SRC_Addserver,.....
  kernel = PROC_Create,PROC_Delete,PROC_Execute,PROC_RealUID,PROC_AuditID,.....
  files = FILE_Open,FILE_Read,FILE_Write,FILE_Close,FILE_Link,FILE_Unlink,.....
  svipc = MSG_Create,MSG_Read,MSG_Write,MSG_Delete,MSG_Owner,MSG_Mode,.....
  mail = SENDMAIL_Config,SENDMAIL_ToFile
  cron = AT_JobAdd,AT_JobRemove,CRON_JobAdd,CRON_JobRemove,CRON_Start,CRON_Finish
  tcpip = TCPIP_config,TCPIP_host_id,TCPIP_route,TCPIP_connect,.....
  lvm = LVM_AddLV,LVM_KDeleteLV,LVM_ExtendLV<LVM_ReduceLV,.....

users:
  root = general
  joe = general,files
  bob = files,cron

```

In this example, each user can have one or more defined classes. Classes are defined only to users that you want to audit. It is not necessary for all users to be defined in the stanza.

## 2.2.2 The oconfig file

The oconfig file is a backup copy of the config file. This file is automatically created everytime you start auditing. If there are any changes in your config file, it automatically creates another copy in the form of the oconfig file, to reflect any changes made.

## 2.2.3 The events file

The events file contains audit event information and has only one stanza: the auditpr. This also contains formatting information, which is that the auditpr command needs to write an audit tail of each event.

An audit event name can be up to 15 bytes long. Longer names are rejected.

The next display shows an example of the events file.

```
#more /etc/security/audit/events

auditpr:

*kernel proc events

* fork()
  PROC_Create = printf "forked child process %d"

* exit()
  PROC_Delete = printf "exited child process %d"

* exec()
  PROC_Execute = printf "euid: %d egid: %d epriv: %x %x name %s"
```

Notice the events PROC\_Create, PROC\_Delete, and PROC\_Execute. All have printf information beside them. This is the information that will be recorded to your trail file as audit events are logged.

Refer to Section 2.6, "More on the events file" on page 42, for detailed information about event formatting, and Appendix A, "Audit events" on page 143, for more information about audit events.

#### 2.2.4 The objects file

This is an ASCII file that contains information about audited objects or files. Each stanza defines exactly one audited file. Each stanza defines one or more access modes:

- r for read
- w for write
- x for execute

The next display shows an example of the objects file.

```
#more /etc/security/audit/objects

/etc/security/environ:
  w = "S_ENVIRON_WRITE"

/etc/security/group:
  w = "S_GROUP_WRITE"

/etc/security/limits:
  w = "S_LIMITS_WRITE"

/etc/security/login.cfg
  w = "S_LOGIN_WRITE"

/etc/security/passwd:
  r = "S_PASSWD_READ"
  w = "S_PASSWD_WRITE"
```

Take a look at the highlighted entry from the previous display.

The first highlighted stanza tells you that an event called S\_ENVIRON\_WRITE will be recorded everytime there is a write (denoted by the letter w), to the file /etc/security/environ.

The second highlighted stanza tells you that everytime there is a read to the /etc/security/passwd file, an event called S\_PASSWD\_READ will be recorded, and an event called S\_PASSWD\_WRITE will be recorded if there is a write to the file.

You can edit this file and add objects that you want to audit together with the mode of operation. Also, do not forget to include the event name for each mode.

In AIX, a file can be an ordinary file or a directory. That means you can audit every write or read attempt to a directory.

### 2.2.5 The bincmds file

This file contains commands that process audit bin data. The default content of this file is given in the next display.

```
#more /etc/security/audit/bincmds

/usr/sbin/auditcat -p -o $trail $bin
```

This command compresses audit bin records and appends them to the audit trail. The name of the current bin file (such as bin1 or bin2), and the system

audit trail file, are substituted for \$bin and \$trail parameter respectively. The value of the temporary files are defined in the configuration file, that is, the binsize parameter of the config file. The -p option tells you to compress the bin file, because it does not compress bin files by default. The -o option shows the output file where the `auditcat` command writes records. The output file in this example is \$trail.

There is also one other command that you can use: the `auditselect` command. This selects audit records that match identified criteria and writes the records to standard output. With the `auditselect` command, you can filter the audit trail to obtain specific records for analysis or select specific records for long-term storage. If the bin files are compressed, the `auditselect` command unpacks them prior to processing. You can add commands to the file depending on your requirement. For example:

- To select audit events indicating unsuccessful authentications or use of privilege, and append the events to the `/audit/trail.violations` file, you must include the following line in the `/etc/security/audit/bincmds` file:

```
/usr/sbin/auditselect -e "result == FAIL_AUTH || \  
result == FAIL_PRIV" $bin >> /audit/trail.violations
```

- To create a hard copy audit log of all user authentication audit events, include the following line in the `/etc/security/audit/bincmds` file:

```
/usr/sbin/auditselect -e "event == USER_Login || \  
event == USER_SU" $bin | /usr/sbin/auditpr -v >/dev/lp0
```

Customize the name of the printer to adjust to your definition.

In the first example, you will need to use the `auditpr` command to read the data in `/audit/trail.violations` file. In the second example, after selecting the event, we added the `auditpr` command, and redirect the output to the printer.

## 2.2.6 The streamcmds file

Contains the audit stream command invoked when the audit system is started.

```
#more /etc/security/audit/streamcmds  
  
/usr/sbin/auditstream | auditpr > /audit/stream.out &
```

The `auditstream` command reads audit records from the audit device, that is, the `/dev/audit` file, and copies the record to standard output, that is, the

/audit/stream.out file, in binary format. The `auditpr` command formats the record for viewing or printing.

For stream data, configure both the `auditstream` command and the `auditselect` command in the `/etc/security/audit/streamcmds` file, or enter both commands from the command line.

Like in `bincmds`, you can add commands to this file depending on your requirement. For example:

- To format all record of events in the general class, and write them on the system console, you can add this line:

```
/usr/sbin/auditstream -c general | /usr/sbin/auditpr -v > /dev/console &
```

- To format all records that resulted in access denial, and prints them on printer `/dev/lp0`:

```
/usr/sbin/auditstream | /usr/sbin/auditselect -e \  
"result == FAIL_ACCESS" | /usr/sbin/auditpr -v > /dev/lp0 &
```

- To format and write all user login and su events to the line printer `/dev/lp0`, you can add this line:

```
/usr/sbin/auditstream | /usr/sbin/auditselect -e "event == \  
USER_Login || event == USER_SU" | /usr/sbin/auditpr -v > /dev/lp0 &
```

**Note**

The `auditstream` command should run in the background with an ampersand (&) at the end. This is true only for stream mode auditing.

---

## 2.3 How to set up auditing

Assuming that you want to audit all su and password change for user joe, what will you do? What is the first step that you can think of? When should you start auditing? In this section, we will show you how to set up both BIN and STREAM mode data collection. We will also show you how to set up event and object auditing.

In the preceding example, we will audit events `USER_SU` and `PASSWORD_Change` for user joe. For object auditing, we will audit all default objects.

First, you have to decide on the following:

- The type of data collection you need: BIN or STREAM. If you want to use BIN mode, then proceed to Section 2.3.1, “BIN mode auditing” on page 23. If you want to use STREAM mode, proceed to Section 2.1.2.2, “STREAM mode” on page 9. If you want to activate BIN and STREAM mode, then please reference both pages.
- Which events you want to audit. Refer to Section 2.3.3, “Events” on page 24.
- Which objects you want to audit. Refer to Section 2.3.4, “Objects” on page 29.

### 2.3.1 BIN mode auditing

To set up BIN mode auditing, you have to do the following:

- Check the config file, and modify if necessary. Binmode should be turned on, for example `binmode = on`.
- Check the bin stanza. Check the path, trail, and bin files. Decide if you want to change the `binsize` value in bytes. Take a look at the path of `cmds`.

You can do both of the preceding actions by using the vi editor. Take a look at the following item:

```
#vi /etc/security/audit/config
```

```
start:
  binmode = on
  streammode = off

bin:
  trail = /audit/trail
  bin1 = /audit/bin1
  bin2 = /audit/bin2
  binsize = 10240
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/bincmds

stream:
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/streamcmds
```

- Check the `bincmds` file. By default, this is inside the `/etc/security/audit` directory. Modify if necessary.

```
#vi /etc/security/audit/bincmds
```

```
/usr/sbin/auditcat -p -o $trail $bin
```

### 2.3.2 STREAM mode auditing

Follow these procedure for setting STREAM mode auditing.

- Check the config file and modify if necessary. Streammode should be turned on, for example streammode = on.
- Check the stream stanza, and look for the cmds line.

You can do both of the preceding actions by using the vi editor. Focus on the following item.

```
#vi /etc/security/audit/config
```

```
start:
  binmode = off
  streammode = on

bin:
  trail = /audit/trail
  bin1 = /audit/bin1
  bin2 = /audit/bin2
  binsize = 10240
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/bincmds

stream:
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/streamcmds
```

- Check the streamcmds file. By default, this is in /etc/security/audit directory. Modify if necessary.

```
#vi /etc/security/audit/streamcmds
```

```
/usr/sbin/auditstream | auditpr > /audit/stream.out
```

### 2.3.3 Events

The following steps should be taken in order to choose which events you wish to audit:

- Decide on the events you want to audit. Take a look at the events file and check the lines USER\_SU and PASSWORD\_Change.

```
#vi /etc/security/audit/events
```

```

auditpr:
* kernel_proc events

* fork ()
  PROC_Create = printf "forked child process %d"
  .
  .
  .
  .
* commands
  .
  .
* su
  USER_SU = printf "%s"

* passwd
  PASSWORD_Change = printf "%s"

```

### Note

Refer to Appendix A, "Audit events" on page 143 for a complete list of all events and their description.

- Group each event in a class. Check if events USER\_SU and PASSWORD\_Change are part of the general class. We will use the default class general.

```
#vi /etc/security/config
```

```

classes:
  general =
  USER_SU,PASSWORD_Change,FILE_Unlink,FILE_Link,FILE_Rename,FS_Chdir,.....
  objects = S_ENVIRON_WRITE,S_GROUP_WRITE,S_LLIMITS_WRITE,S_LOGIN_WRITE,.....
  SRC = SRC_Start,SRC_Stop,SRC_Addssys,SRC_Chssys,SRC_Delssys,SRC_Addserver,.....
  kernel = PROC_Create,PROC_Delete,PROC_Execute,PROC_RealUID,PROC_AuditID,.....
  files = FILE_Open,FILE_Read,FILE_Write,FILE_Close,FILE_Link,FILE_Unlink,.....
  svipc = MSG_Create,MSG_Read,MSG_Write,MSG_Delete,MSG_Owner,MSG_Mode,.....
  mail = SENDMAIL_Config,SENDMAIL_ToFile
  cron = AT_JobAdd,AT_JobRemove,CRON_JobAdd,CRON_JobRemove,CRON_Start,CRON_Finish
  tcpip = TCPIP_config,TCPIP_host_id,TCPIP_route,TCPIP_connect,.....
  lvm = LVM_AddLV,LVM_KDeleteLV,LVM_ExtendLV<LVM_ReduceLV,.....

users:
  root = general
  joe = general
  bob = files,cron

```

- Decide which class, for a particular user, you want to audit. You can do this by using wsm, smit or vi. Remember that event auditing is ALWAYS associated by a user ID.

```
#/usr/websm/bin/wsmuser
```

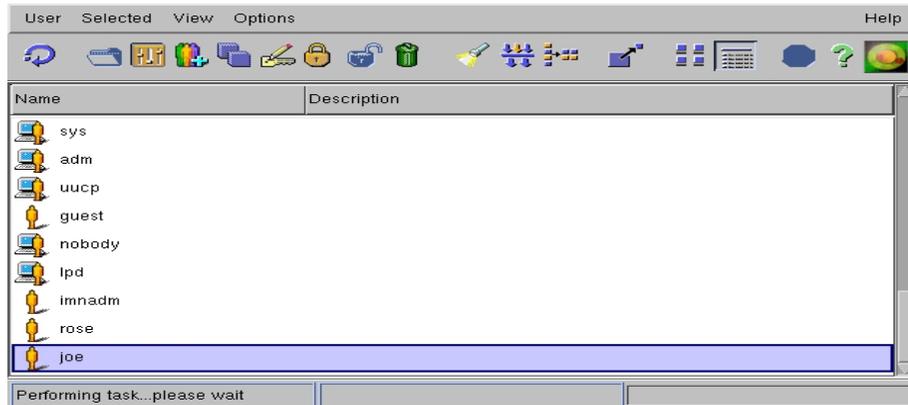


Figure 4. WSM user interface - Select a user

Using Figure 4 on page 26 as an example, select the user name you want to audit (in this case joe) and press **Enter**. Look for the status at the lower left hand portion of the display. The message performing task...please wait indicates that the request is being processed. After this task ends, you will have a display similar to Figure 5 on page 27. Select a class for auditing.

Go to the auditing folder, and select the class you want for user joe (in this case, general). The class name should appear under the column Audited Objects. After selecting the class, click **Apply** then **OK**. This will save changes in your configuration.

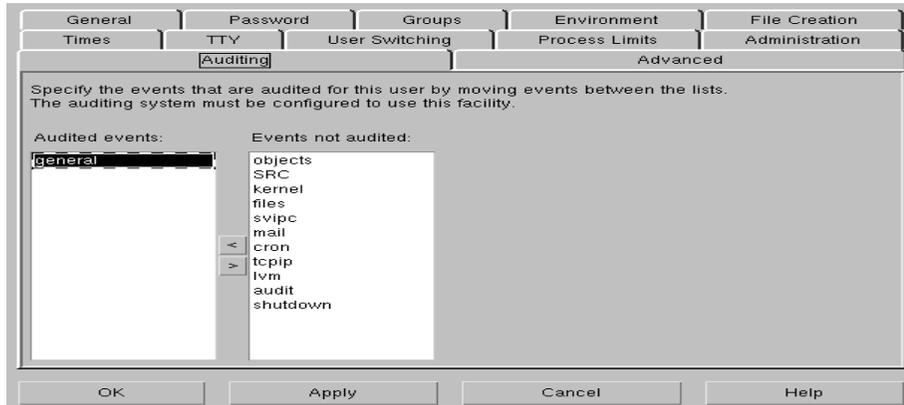


Figure 5. WSM user interface - Select a class for auditing

You can also use `smit`.

```
#smit user
```

Select the entry to change/show characteristics of a user. The assumption is that there is an existing user name `joe`. You will now see the next display.



Figure 6. SMIT user interface - Select a user name

Using Figure 6 on page 27 as an example, click the list button. This button will give you a list of existing users. Select user name `joe` and click **OK**.

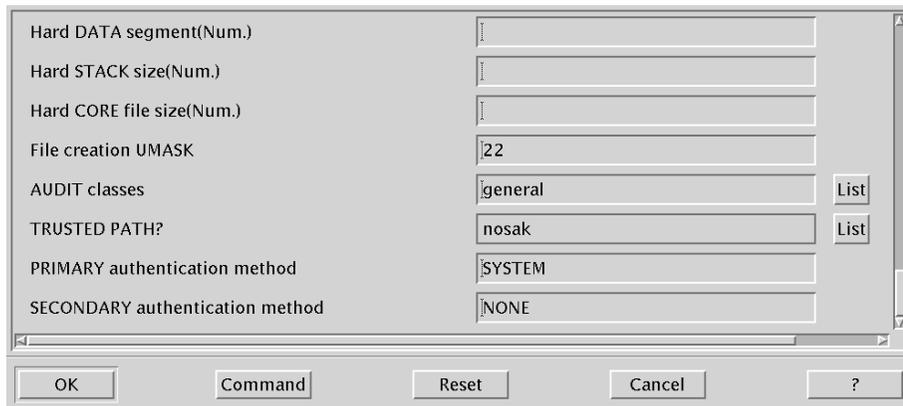


Figure 7. SMIT user interface - AUDIT class

Using Figure 7 on page 28 as an example, go to the audit classes entry, and click the list button. It will then give you the preceding display



Figure 8. SMIT user interface - Select the class you want for a user

Using Figure 8 on page 28 as an example, select the class you want to audit for user joe, and click the **OK** button. You have now selected audit class general for user joe.

You can also use the vi editor to select an audit class for user joe. Include the line joe = general in the users stanza.

```
#vi /etc/security/audit/config
```

```

config file display 2 of 2

classes:
  general =
USER_SU, PASSWORD_Change, FILE_Unlink, FILE_Link, FILE_Rename, FS_Chdir, .....
  objects = S_ENVIRON_WRITE, S_GROUP_WRITE, S_LILITS_WRITE, S_LOGIN_WRITE, .....
  SRC = SRC_Start, SRC_Stop, SRC_Addssys, SRC_Chssys, SRC_Delssys, SRC_Addserver, .....
  kernel = PROC_Create, PROC_Delete, PROC_Execute, PROC_RealUID, PROC_AuditID, .....
  files = FILE_Open, FILE_Read, FILE_Write, FILE_Close, FILE_Link, FILE_Unlink, .....
  svipc = MSG_Create, MSG_Read, MSG_Write, MSG_Delete, MSG_Owner, MSG_Mode, .....
  mail = SENDMAIL_Config, SENDMAIL_ToFile
  cron = AT_JobAdd, AT_JobRemove, CRON_JobAdd, CRON_JobRemove, CRON_Start, CRON_Finish
  tcpip = TCPIP_config, TCPIP_host_id, TCPIP_route, TCPIP_connect, .....
  lvm = LVM_AddLV, LVM_KDeleteLV, LVM_ExtendLV, LVM_ReduceLV, .....

users:
  root = general
  joe = general
  bob = files, cron

```

Be careful in using the vi editor; there is a probability that you might type in extra characters.

### 2.3.4 Objects

The following steps should be taken in order to choose which objects you wish to audit:

- Decide on the objects you want to audit:

```
#vi /etc/security/audit/objects
```

```
/etc/security/environ:
  w = "S_ENVIRON_WRITE"

/etc/security/group:
  w = "S_GROUP_WRITE"

/etc/security/limits:
  w = "S_LIMITS_WRITE"

/etc/security/login.cfg
  w = "S_LOGIN_WRITE"

/etc/security/passwd:
  r = "S_PASSWD_READ"
  w = "S_PASSWD_WRITE"

/etc/security/user:
  w = "S_USER_WRITE"

/etc/security/audit/config:
  w = "AUD_CONFIG_WR"
```

Add the file you want to audit. It is normally added at the end of the objects file.

If you do not want the objects audit records when auditing a user ID, comment out the objects defined in the /etc/security/audit/objects file or rename the file.

At this point, you can now start auditing:

```
#!/usr/sbin/audit start
```

---

## 2.4 Advanced auditing setup

Now that you know how to set up auditing, let us try some advanced auditing configuration. This section will discuss how to add an event and a class to the config file. Some auditpr techniques will also be discussed.

Let us now perform a little exercise that will help us understand how to exploit the information provided by the auditing subsystem.

You are the head of your IT services group. You have two other people working with you in maintaining your servers. As part of their role as system administrators, they need to know the root password of all your RS/6000 servers.

One day, you were working on a project when suddenly your session was disconnected. Thinking that this could just be a time out problem, you did not

bother to check it. The next day, it happened again twice. You decided to check your server and network to find out the probable cause of your session being disconnected. While checking on the files, you notice that all history logs and other information that can help you determine the cause are all gone. You decided to change the root password but after a month it happened again. It appears that someone knows the root password and is trying to kill the process!

What auditing techniques could be used to find out the real cause of the problem?

For this example, we will use BIN data collection method.

First, you have to know what events are involved in a kill process. Use the vi editor to check the events file:

```
#vi /etc/security/audit/events
```

```
#more /etc/security/audit/events  
  
auditpr:  
.....more.....  
* kill()  
  PROC_Kill = printf "pid: %d, sig: %d"  
.....more.....
```

You now have the PROC\_Kill event.

Check the config file to see if it contains the PROC\_Kill event. Add the event if you do not have it on file. You may also want to create a separate class for this event.

We will define a new class called *kill*, and include the event PROC\_Kill under the new class. After this, we will assign this class to all users, including root.

Your config file should look like this:

```
start:
  binmode = off
  streammode = on

bin:
  trail = /audit/trail
  bin1 = /audit/bin1
  bin2 = /audit/bin2
  binsize = 10240
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/bincmds

stream:
  cmds = /etc/security/audit/streamcmds
classes:
  ....more.....
  kill = PROC_Kill
users:
  root = general,kill
  joe = general,kill
```

Now you can start auditing by using the command:

```
#audit start
```

**Note**

The newly assigned audit class will take effect at the next login for that user.

Refer to Section 2.5.4, “Output for advance auditing setup” on page 40 to read an example of the output.

---

## 2.5 Understanding the output

The audit system should be able to create an audit trail of all auditable events. Your log file may contain just enough information, or it might also contain too much information. You have to always remember that each record should contain information that would help you construct a scenario of what actually happened for a given time.

Initially, you want to set up auditing in order to know what is happening on your system. This can be for one user, for all users, for several classes, or for all system activity. Now that you have the audit record, what do you plan to do with it?

At this point, you are now ready to read the data collected. There are two repositories for auditing. The default is the `/audit/trail` file for BIN data collection, and the `/audit/stream.out` file for STREAM mode data collection.

Here is the scenario for event auditing. This record was generated when user joe did the following:

- Connected to the server through tcp/ip using the command `telnet lv9510c`, where `lv9510c` is the hostname.
- Login as user joe from the login prompt.
- Change joe's password, using the command `passwd`; the change was not successful.
- Change joe's password again, using the command `passwd`. Now joe was able to change his password successfully.
- Try to su to user root, but gave a wrong password. He used the command `su`.
- Try to su to user root again using the `su` command. Now he was able to su to user root successfully.

We are assuming that:

- The data collection mode is for both BIN and STREAM.
- All the default BIN and STREAM stanza are used.
- We will audit the class general for user joe.

### 2.5.1 Event auditing - BIN mode

To read the output, you can use this command:

```
auditpr -v < /audit/trail
```

The next display gives you a sample output for BIN mode auditing:

| event           | login  | status           | time                       | command              |
|-----------------|--------|------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| S_PASSWD_READ   | root   | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:12 2000   | telnetd              |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | root   | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:12 2000   | telnetd              |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| TCPIP_connect   | root   | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:12 2000   | telnetd              |
|                 | TCP/IP | ::ffff:9.3.1.130 | telnet/tcp                 | open                 |
| FS_Chdir        | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:22 2000   | tsm                  |
|                 | change | current          | directory to:              | /home/joe            |
| PASSWORD_Change | joe    | FAIL             | Thu Jun 15 12:33:30 2000   | passwd               |
|                 | joe    |                  |                            |                      |
| PASSWORD_Change | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:40 2000   | passwd               |
|                 | joe    |                  |                            |                      |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:43 2000   | su                   |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:44 2000   | su                   |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| USER_SU         | joe    | FAIL             | Thu Jun 15 12:33:44 2000   | su                   |
|                 | root   |                  |                            |                      |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:46 2000   | su                   |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000   | su                   |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000   | su                   |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000   | su                   |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000   | su                   |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000   | su                   |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ   | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000   | su                   |
|                 | sample | audit            | object read event detected | /etc/security/passwd |
| USER_SU         | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000   | su                   |
|                 | root   |                  |                            |                      |
| FS_Chdir        | joe    | OK               | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000   | su                   |
|                 | change | current          | directory to:              | /                    |

This has five columns:

- event** Gives the event name defined in the events file.
- login** Gives the login ID.
- status** States if the execution of an event is successful or not. Valid values are OK, FAIL, FAIL\_AUTH, FAIL\_PRIV, FAIL\_ACCESS and FAIL\_DAC.
- time** Gives the date and time the event was executed.
- commands** Gives the command used that triggered the event.

The status column has six valid values; a description of each follows:

- The OK value means that there was a successful execution of an event.
- The FAIL value means that there was an unsuccessful execution of an event. This is the default FAIL value.
- The FAIL\_AUTH value indicates that authentication was denied. The user may have tried to login and failed authentication by giving an incorrect password, or tried to login to a console where they do not have permission to do so.
- The FAIL\_PRIV value indicates lack of privilege.
- The FAIL\_ACCESS value indicates lack of access.
- The FAIL\_DAC value indicates the event failed because of a discretionary access control (DAC) denial. Access Control Lists are a form of information repository that contain data relative to the rights of access(permission) to shared resources/objects. ACLs are categorized on DAC mechanism.

Look at the four highlighted entries of this record. Notice the PASSWORD\_Change and USER\_SU events. Notice also the status of each event. The second line of each event is what we call the tail portion. This came from the printf information of the events file. The tail portion can be modified (depending on what you want to be recorded) if the `auditpr` command used the events file.

When joe tried changing his password and entered a wrong password, the PASSWORD\_Change event was triggered with a FAIL status. The second line gives you the user whose password joe wanted to change. Joe tried changing his password again, and now he was able to successfully change his password. This time the PASSWORD\_Change event was again triggered, but with the status equivalent to OK.

The same is true when he tried to su to user root. The only difference is, now event USER\_SU was triggered, and the second line gives you the ID to which user joe wants to su.

Let us now take a look at the output of stream mode.

### 2.5.2 Event auditing - STREAM mode

To read the output, you can use the vi editor.

```
#vi /audit/stream.out
```

The next display gives you a sample output for STREAM mode data collection method:

| event                  | login      | status      | time                            | command       |
|------------------------|------------|-------------|---------------------------------|---------------|
| S_PASSWD_READ          | root       | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:12 2000        | telnetd       |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | root       | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:12 2000        | telnetd       |
| TCPIP_connect          | root       | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:12 2000        | telnetd       |
| FS_Chdir               | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:22 2000        | tsh           |
| <b>PASSWORD_Change</b> | <b>joe</b> | <b>FAIL</b> | <b>Thu Jun 15 12:33:30 2000</b> | <b>passwd</b> |
| <b>PASSWORD_Change</b> | <b>joe</b> | <b>OK</b>   | <b>Thu Jun 15 12:33:40 2000</b> | <b>passwd</b> |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:43 2000        | su            |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:44 2000        | su            |
| <b>USER_SU</b>         | <b>joe</b> | <b>FAIL</b> | <b>Thu Jun 15 12:33:44 2000</b> | <b>su</b>     |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:46 2000        | su            |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000        | su            |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000        | su            |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000        | su            |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000        | su            |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000        | su            |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000        | su            |
| S_PASSWD_READ          | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000        | su            |
| <b>USER_SU</b>         | <b>joe</b> | <b>OK</b>   | <b>Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000</b> | <b>su</b>     |
| FS_Chdir               | joe        | OK          | Thu Jun 15 12:33:48 2000        | su            |

Like in BIN mode, this mode has five columns.

Look at the four highlighted entries of the file stream.out. Take a look at the events PASSWORD\_Change and USER\_SU. Notice also the status of each event.

You interpret this record the same way you interpreted the BIN mode record.

However, do you notice the difference in the records? Why is the output of BIN mode different from the output of the STREAM mode?

**Note**

Look closely at how the data was formatted.

Do you remember the `auditpr` command?

If you remember the `auditpr` command, you will see the difference. The reason for this is that in BIN mode we used the `-v` option. The `-v` option displays the tail of each audit record using the format specification in the `/etc/security/audit/events` file. Remember the `auditpr` command formats the record to make it readable. This will be discussed further in Section 2.6, “More on the events file” on page 42.

Aside from the formatting difference, do not forget that BIN mode can store records for a long term period, while STREAM mode records get overwritten whenever you start auditing.

### 2.5.3 Object auditing - STREAM mode

This is the scenario for object auditing. This record was generated when user joe did the following:

- Connected to the server through tcp/ip using the command `telnet lv9510c`, where `lv9510c` is the hostname.
- Logged in as user joe from the login prompt. Joe belongs to staff group.
- Tried to su to root with the correct password using the `su` command.
- Viewed the `/etc/security/passwd` file using the command `vi /etc/security/passwd`.
- Viewed the `/etc/security/passwd` file using the command `vi /etc/security/passwd`, then save and exited from vi editor.

We assume that:

- STREAM mode data collection is on.
- All the default BIN and STREAM stanza are used.
- We have edited the file `/etc/security/audit/streamcmds` to include the `-v` option. The file should look like this:

```
#vi /etc/security/audit/streamcmds
```

```
/usr/sbin/auditstream | auditpr -v > /audit/stream.out
```

The next two displays give you a sample output for the STREAM mode data collection method that used object auditing.

/audit/stream.out display 1 of 2

| event          | login                 | status                     | time                     | command              |
|----------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| -----          |                       |                            |                          |                      |
| _PASSWD_READ   | root                  | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:28 2000 | telnetd              |
| sample         | audit                 | object read event detected |                          | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ  | root                  | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:28 2000 | telnetd              |
| sample         | audit                 | object read event detected |                          | /etc/security/passwd |
| TCP/IP_connect | root                  | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:28 2000 | telnetd              |
| TCP/IP         | ::ffff:9.3.1.130      | telnet/tcp open            |                          |                      |
| FS_Chdir       | joe                   | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:31 2000 | tsm                  |
| change         | current directory to: |                            |                          | /home/joe            |
| S_PASSWD_READ  | joe                   | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:35 2000 | su                   |
| sample         | audit                 | object read event detected |                          | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ  | joe                   | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:36 2000 | su                   |
| sample         | audit                 | object read event detected |                          | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ  | joe                   | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:36 2000 | su                   |
| sample         | audit                 | object read event detected |                          | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ  | joe                   | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:36 2000 | su                   |
| sample         | audit                 | object read event detected |                          | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ  | joe                   | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:36 2000 | su                   |
| sample         | audit                 | object read event detected |                          | /etc/security/passwd |
| S_PASSWD_READ  | joe                   | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:36 2000 | su                   |
| sample         | audit                 | object read event detected |                          | /etc/security/passwd |
| USER_SU        | joe                   | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:36 2000 | su                   |
| root           |                       |                            |                          |                      |
| FS_Chdir       | joe                   | OK                         | Mon Jun 19 15:44:36 2000 | su                   |
| change         | current directory to: |                            |                          | /                    |

```

/audit/stream.out display 2 of 2

FILE_Unlink   joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:43 2000 vi
              filename /var/tmp/Ex17820
S_PASSWD_READ joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:43 2000 vi
              sample audit object read event detected /etc/security/passwd
S_PASSWD_READ joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:43 2000 vi
              sample audit object read event detected /etc/security/passwd
S_PASSWD_READ joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:43 2000 vi
              sample audit object read event detected /etc/security/passwd
FILE_Unlink   joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:45 2000 vi
              filename /var/tmp/Ex17820
FILE_Unlink   joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:47 2000 vi
              filename /var/tmp/Ex17822
S_PASSWD_READ joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:47 2000 vi
              sample audit object read event detected /etc/security/passwd
S_PASSWD_READ joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:47 2000 vi
              sample audit object read event detected /etc/security/passwd
S_PASSWD_READ joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:47 2000 vi
              sample audit object read event detected /etc/security/passwd
S_PASSWD_WRITE joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:48 2000 vi
              audit object write event detected /etc/security/passwd
FILE_Unlink   joe      OK          Mon Jun 19 15:44:48 2000 vi
              filename /var/tmp/Ex17822

```

Look at the /audit/stream.out file display 2 of 2. Notice the first highlighted S\_PASSWD\_READ event. This event was triggered when user joe tried reading the /etc/security/passwd file using the vi editor. Notice the second attempt of joe. He issued another vi command, and the same event, which is S\_PASSWD\_READ, was triggered. Take a look at the third highlighted line. Previously, joe read the file, and now he wrote something on that file. At this point, we do not know exactly if something was appended on the /etc/security/passwd file. What we know is that joe used the exit and save option of vi.

Why did the system allowed joe to view and save the /etc/security/passwd file? Remember one of the assumptions? Joe is a member of the staff group.

**Note**

Examine closely the output and use your knowledge of event auditing.

Yes, you are right! The first display shows that joe actually did an su to user root; that is why the USER\_SU event was logged. He was able to login successfully; that is why the FS\_Chdir was logged. Note that if a user logs in the system, the user goes to the home directory. This is the reason why he was able to go to the root (/) directory. Notice the last two event entries in display one. This is a combination of user and object auditing.

## 2.5.4 Output for advance auditing setup

Let us now read the output from the scenario in Section 2.4, “Advanced auditing setup” on page 30.

We will use the `auditpr` command to read the output and save it in a file called `trail.out`.

```
#auditpr -h e,l,r,t,R,c < /audit/trail > trail.out
```

The `-h` option of the `auditpr` command allows you to select what field to display and the order in which to display them. Here is a brief description of each field that we used:

- The `e` field gives you the audit event.
- The `l` field gives you the user’s login name that generated the audit event.
- The `r` field gives you the user’s real name that generated the audit event.
- The `t` field gives you the time the record was written.
- The `R` field gives you the audit status.
- The `c` field gives you the command name.

For a detailed discussion of the `auditpr` command, refer to *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference*, SBOF-1877.

The next display shows you a sample output of the `auditpr` command.

```
#auditpr -h e,l,r,t,R,c < trail > trail.out
```

| event         | login | real | time                     | status | command  |
|---------------|-------|------|--------------------------|--------|----------|
| S_PASSWD_READ | root  | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:37 2000 | OK     | telnetd  |
| S_PASSWD_READ | root  | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:37 2000 | OK     | telnetd  |
| TCPIP_connect | root  | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:37 2000 | OK     | telnetd  |
| FS_Chdir      | joe   | joe  | Tue Jun 20 16:27:41 2000 | OK     | tsh      |
| S_PASSWD_READ | joe   | joe  | Tue Jun 20 16:27:42 2000 | OK     | su       |
| S_PASSWD_READ | joe   | joe  | Tue Jun 20 16:27:43 2000 | OK     | su       |
| S_PASSWD_READ | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:43 2000 | OK     | su       |
| S_PASSWD_READ | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:43 2000 | OK     | su       |
| S_PASSWD_READ | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:43 2000 | OK     | su       |
| S_PASSWD_READ | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:43 2000 | OK     | su       |
| S_PASSWD_READ | joe   | joe  | Tue Jun 20 16:27:43 2000 | OK     | su       |
| S_PASSWD_READ | joe   | joe  | Tue Jun 20 16:27:43 2000 | OK     | su       |
| USER_SU       | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:43 2000 | OK     | su       |
| FILE_Rename   | root  | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:45 2000 | OK     | xntpd    |
| FS_Chdir      | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:51 2000 | OK     | ps       |
| FS_Chdir      | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:51 2000 | OK     | ps       |
| FS_Chdir      | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:51 2000 | OK     | ps       |
| FS_Chdir      | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:51 2000 | OK     | ps       |
| FS_Chdir      | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:51 2000 | OK     | ps       |
| FS_Chdir      | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:27:51 2000 | OK     | ps       |
| PROC_Kill     | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:28:09 2000 | OK     | ksh      |
| FILE_Unlink   | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:28:23 2000 | OK     | rm       |
| FILE_Unlink   | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:28:23 2000 | OK     | rm       |
| FILE_Unlink   | joe   | root | Tue Jun 20 16:28:23 2000 | OK     | rm       |
| FILE_Unlink   | root  | root | Tue Jun 20 16:28:27 2000 | OK     | cdsclerk |
| FILE_Unlink   | root  | root | Tue Jun 20 16:28:27 2000 | OK     | cdsclerk |
| FILE_Rename   | root  | root | Tue Jun 20 16:28:27 2000 | OK     | cdsclerk |

With this output, what could have happened is:

- There was a TCPIP\_connect attempt to the server. Note the telnetd command and the event TCPIP\_connect.
- User joe logged into the system. Notice the event FS\_Chdir after the TCPIP\_connect event.
- Joe issued an su command to root user, that is, through the event USER\_SU. Look at the login and real name column. The login ID is Joe, but the real ID is root.
- Look at the commands column. Notice the ps command. The real user, which is root, with joe as the login ID, was checking some process.
- Now, notice the event PROC\_Kill. This time a signal was sent to a process that could have killed one or more process.
- After the PROC\_Kill event, there were multiple FILE\_Unlink events. Several rm commands were issued. There could be several files deleted

from the system. Note that it is still user joe (using the root ID) doing these commands.

With the right combination, and the proper timing, you can make good use of the things you have learned. This time you were able to capture several events that occurred on a given time, and you were able to interpret the audit record.

---

## 2.6 More on the events file

The events file contains information about system audit events. This file contains the `auditpr` stanza, which lists all audit events in the system, and provides formatting information. In the previous example, Section 2.5, “Understanding the output” on page 32, you saw the difference of the two outputs, and what the `-v` option can do. This section will explain further formatting information.

The `auditpr` command reads audit records, in Bin or Stream format, from standard input and sends formatted records to standard output.

The next display shows you an example of what the events file contain.

```
auditpr:
.....more.....
* su
  USER_SU = printf "%s"
* chdir()
  FS_Chdir = printf "change current directory to: %s"
.....more.....
```

A sample output using the `auditpr` stanza of the events file follows:

```
event      login    status   time                command
-----
USER_SU    joe      OK       Mon Jun 19 15:44:36 2000 su
..... tail portion .....
FS_Chdir   joe      OK       Mon Jun 19 15:44:36 2000 su
..... tail portion .....
```

Each attribute in the `auditpr` stanza, which is from `/etc/security/audit/events` file, has the following format:

`auditevent = FormatCommand`

Audit events are generally defined at a system call level. FormatCommand have the following formatting information:

Table 2. Audit event formatting information

| Format | Description   |
|--------|---|
| %A     | Formatted output similar to the acdget command  |
| %d     | Formatted as a 32-bit signed decimal integer  |
| \$G    | Formatted as a comma-separated list of group names or numerical identifiers   |
| %o     | Formatted as 32-bit octal integer   |
| %P     | Formatted output is similar to the pcdget command   |
| %s     | Formatted as a text string  |
| %T     | Formatted as a text string giving include date and time with 6 significant digits for the seconds DD Mmm YYYY HH:MM:SS:mmmuuu). |
| %u     | Formatted as a 32-bit unsigned integer  |
| %x     | Formatted as a 32-bit hexadecimal integer   |
| %X     | Formatted as a 32-bit hexadecimal integer with upper case letters   |

To format the tail of an audit record, add format specifications in the auditpr stanza of /etc/security/audit/events file. An example of how the output tail looks is shown in Table 3. This includes event names, format information, and tail portion. The tail portion's format came from the events file.

Table 3. Sample formatting output

| Event Name     | Formatted Output                         | Tail                                   |
|----------------|--|--|
| USER_SU        | printf "%s"                              | root                                   |
| FS_Chdir       | printf "change current directory to: %s" | change current directory to: /home/joe |
| PROC_Create    | printf "forked child process %d"         | forked child process 3534              |
| FILE_Mode      | printf "mode:%o filename %s"             | mode: 777 filename sample              |
| PROC_Privilege | printf "cmd: %x privset: %x:%x"          | cmd: 30005 privset: ffffffff:fffffff   |

| Event Name | Formatted Output                               | Tail   |
|------------|--|--|
| FILE_Open  | printf "flags: %d mode: %o fd: %d filename %s" | flags: 0 mode: 0 fd: 3 filename /usr/lib/nls/msg/en_US/ksh.c<br>at |
| FILE_Read  | printf "file descriptor = %d"                  | file descriptor = 3  |

For example:

- Using the event `USER_SU`, the formatted output gives you `%s`. The `auditpr` command then substitutes the value as a text string, thus giving the tail output.
- Using the event `FILE_Mode`, the formatted output gives you `%o`, which is for 32-bit octal integer, and `%s` as a text string, thus giving you the tail portion.

You may or may not use the events file. In case you do not want to use the formatting information from the events file, then make sure you specify the fields that will help you build a scenario of what happened.

For a detailed discussion of the `auditpr` command refer to *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference*, SBOF-1877.

---

## 2.7 Exceptions

You might have noticed from the `trail` or `stream.out` file that there are some events, not actually set to be logged, that are being logged. Given the way that `tcip` and `cron` codes are written, they have their own set of audit events. These events will be written to the audit trail regardless of how you set up the config file. To eliminate `tcip` and `cron` codes from being logged you can use the `auditselect` command. The `audiselect` command is the best way to filter those codes out. For example:

```
/usr/sbin/auditselect -e "event != AT_JobAdd && \
event != ATJobRemove" $bin >> /audit/train.exceptions
```

This will exclude events `AT_JobAdd` and `ATJobRemove`.

```
/usr/sbin/auditselect -e "command != cron && \
command != at" $bin >> /audit/trail.exceptions
```

This excludes recording related to commands `at` and `cron`.

The example refers to the use of BIN mode auditing. If you are using STREAM mode auditing, the `auditselect` can be included in the `streamcmds` file. For example:

```
/usr/sbin/auditstream |/usr/sbin/auditselect -e "command != cron \  
&& command != at" | /usr/sbin/auditpr -v > /audit/stream.exceptions &
```

This command excludes recording related to commands `cron` and `at`.

The `auditselect` command has three valid logical operator values:

- `&&`(And) - the logical operator, `term1 && term2`, means that the expression `term1` and `term2` is true.
- `||`(Or) - the logical operator, `term1 || term2`, means that the expression `term1` or `term2` is true.
- `!`(Not) - the logical operator, `!term1`, means that `term1` is not true.

Aside from the logical operator value, there is also a relational operator value and a different field. For a detailed discussion of the `auditselect` command refer to *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference*, SBOF-1877.

---

## 2.8 Common problems with auditing

Identifying the source of a problem can sometimes be too simple or too complicated. It is often a circular process. Once you have the problem description, initial investigation is performed. A hypothesis is drawn based on the facts gathered. Action is taken in an attempt to fix the problem and to test the validity of the hypothesis. If this is unsuccessful, another investigation is performed.

Once the cause is determined, you can draw a plan in an attempt to solve the problem. You have to consider a lot of factors, such as the effect on your system, downtime, the risk factors and so forth. It is important for you to understand that merely fixing a problem may address the symptom, but problem determination is not yet complete. Identifying the cause of a problem is different from identifying the source of the problem. Problem determination is not complete until the cause has been determined.

It is not the intent of this section to cover all problem determination techniques. We will just present to you some commonly encountered problems and error messages.

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>Symptom</b>       | When I run the <code>audit start</code> command, it gives me an error.  |
| <b>Error Message</b> | ** /audit is not a directory  |
| <b>Action</b>        | The <code>audit start</code> command automatically creates the audit directory. There could have been an existing ordinary file called audit. You can either delete or rename this file.  |
| <b>Symptom</b>       | When I run the <code>audit start</code> command, it gives me an error.  |
| <b>Error Message</b> | ** auditing enabled already<br><br>A system call received a parameter that is not valid.  |
| <b>Action</b>        | None. Auditing was already started, and you are trying to start it again.   |
| <b>Symptom</b>       | I would like to set up event auditing, but when I run the <code>audit start</code> command, it gives me an error.   |
| <b>Error Message</b> | ** cannot find "streammode" keyword in "start" stanza in "/etc/security/audit/config"<br><br>A system call received a parameter that is not valid.  |
| <b>Action</b>        | Check the config file. Look for the streammode line in the start stanza. If it was deleted, then add the line with the corresponding value, such as off or on. If the streammode line is there, check for extra characters. You might have typed in extra characters before the start stanza. |
| <b>Symptom</b>       | When I run the <code>audit start</code> command, it gives me an error.  |
| <b>Error Message</b> | ** cannot find "users" stanza in "/etc/security/audit/config"<br><br>** failed setting kernel audit objects   |
| <b>Action</b>        | Check the config file, and look for the users stanza. It could either be missing, or extra characters could have been typed in the users stanza.  |
| <b>Symptom</b>       | I configured my streamcmds file using the -v option for the <code>auditpr</code> command. When I ran the <code>audit start</code> command, it gives me this error.  |

**Error Message** /etc/security/audit/events: A file or directory in the path name does not exist.

\*\* warning - no tails will be printed type here

**Action** You can disregard this error, but the tail portion will not be printed. Also, check the events file; it could have been renamed, or deleted.

**Symptom** the `audit start` command fails with this message

**Error Message** \*\* failed setting kernel audit objects

**Action** Check the objects file. There could be a syntax error in this file.

---

## 2.9 Sizing considerations

Whenever you want to run something new on your system, you often raise the following concerns:

- What are the benefits?
- How much disk space does it consume?
- Does it have any performance impact on my system?

After going through this chapter, you now know the benefits that you can get if you turn auditing on. But what about disk space and performance issue? This section will discuss these concerns.

### 2.9.1 Disk space

Depending upon the amount of activity on a system, the mode of data collection used and the tail information, the audit trail size may vary. It is safe to assume though that the audit trail grows in size.

Audit information is recorded as auditable events occur. Although most information is not required to be immediately available for real-time analysis, you should have the capability to retrieve audit information within minutes of its recording. The audit trail should be reviewed at least once a week. It is very possible, however, that once a week may be too long to wait to review the audit trail. Depending on the amount of audit data and the need to review these information, this parameter should be adjusted accordingly.

The audit trail should be sufficient enough to give you a complete sequence of what happened on your system at a given time. To do this, the audit trail should contain, at least, the following information: date and time of the event, user, type of event, success or failure of the event, and the command used.

The size of each event varies depending on the tail information from the events file. It also depends on the fields you want to include in your report. If you have decided that all activities should be audited, there are overhead factors to be considered. Table 4 gives you an idea of the size of the trail file. In this example, the trail file contains information about the following: event, login, status, time, and command.

Table 4. Sample size of each event with header information

| Events               | Trail in bytes with header | Stream.out in bytes w/ header |
|----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| PASSWORD_Change      | 127                        | 285                           |
| TCPIP_connect        | 145                        | 285                           |
| USER_SU and FS_Chdir | 132                        | 380                           |
| USER_SU              | 102                        | 285                           |
| FS_Chdir             | 108                        | 285                           |

Each audit record has a header. This header gives you a description of the content of each column. For BIN mode, the header part is approximately 88 bytes; thus, each event can range from 20 bytes or more. For STREAM mode, the header part is approximately 190 bytes; thus, each event can range from 100 bytes or more. Note that the less information you have, the smaller the size of your record is.

## 2.9.2 Performance

Each event does a preliminary check to see if auditing is turned on. If on, it informs the kernel that audit is enabled, and starts recording and auditing information for each command that has auditing enabled. The kernel logger service automatically writes the auditing information to the audit trail file after the command is completed. This is true for all events and objects. Although there is a slight difference in the amount of time each event takes to finish audit logging, the difference is still so small that is almost negligible.

Overall, regardless if auditing is enabled or not, the system has a slight overhead utilization hit based on auditing. The reason is that there are some codes written that have their own set of audit events. There is no overhead in having auditing on if the events that are being audited are not occurring.

---

## Chapter 3. Accounting on AIX

The AIX accounting system provides you with information about the use of system resources. These data can be used to:

- Bill the users for the resources used.
- Control the use of some resources (such as disk space).
- Substantiate the need for system expansion.
- Perform performance monitoring.
- Maintain an audit trail for security purposes.

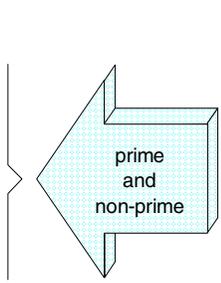
AIX accounting implementation is fully compatible with AT&T System V Release 4. With AIX, you can also use 4.3 BSD accounting utilities to inspect some of the accounting files. Because of this two-fold interface, you will occasionally find two different ways to obtain the same accounting data.

---

### 3.1 Inside accounting

The main goal of the accounting system is to generate the data shown in Figure 9.

|                         |            |
|-------------------------|------------|
| uid                     | login name |
| CPU time (min)          |            |
| memory (KB×min)         |            |
| chars transferred (KB)  |            |
| blocks read and written |            |
| connect time (min)      |            |
| disk usage (blocks)     |            |
| pages printed           |            |
| special services        |            |
| # processes             |            |
| # sessions              |            |



The diagram consists of a table on the left with 11 rows of accounting data. To the right of the table is a large, light-blue arrow pointing left towards the table. Inside the arrow, the text 'prime and non-prime' is written. The arrow has a 3D effect with a shadow on its right side.

Figure 9. The total accounting record (tacct)

#### 3.1.1 Accounting resources

The total accounting record (tacct) contains the following information for each user:

- The user's login name and uid
- The total CPU time (system time plus user time) utilized by the user's processes in minutes
- The integral of core memory allocated by the user's processes while they were holding the CPU, in KB times minutes
- The number of KB read or written by the user's processes
- The number of disk blocks read or written by the user's processes
- The time in minutes the user was connected to the system
- The number of 512 byte disk blocks allocated by the user's files
- The number of pages printed by the user
- Any special services charged by the system administrator
- The number of processes ran by the user
- The number of sessions started by the user

The exact structure of the total accounting files can be found in Appendix B.1, "The tacct file" on page 153.

### 3.1.2 Billing periods

The accounting system breaks up resource usage into two different billing periods: prime-time and non-prime time. Prime-time hours are defined by you and are, by default, from 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., with the exception of weekends and holidays. Thus, as depicted in Figure 9, the total accounting record contains, for some resources, such as CPU time, their usage during each of the two billing periods.

### 3.1.3 Accounting processes

The process of gathering the above information is quite complex, involving several daemons and commands, as well as some kernel functions. There are four distinct modules used by the accounting system to generate the usage data as depicted in Figure 10. These modules generate intermediate files that are processed by the `/usr/sbin/acct/runacct` command, generating the total accounting files. This command is run daily as a cron job.

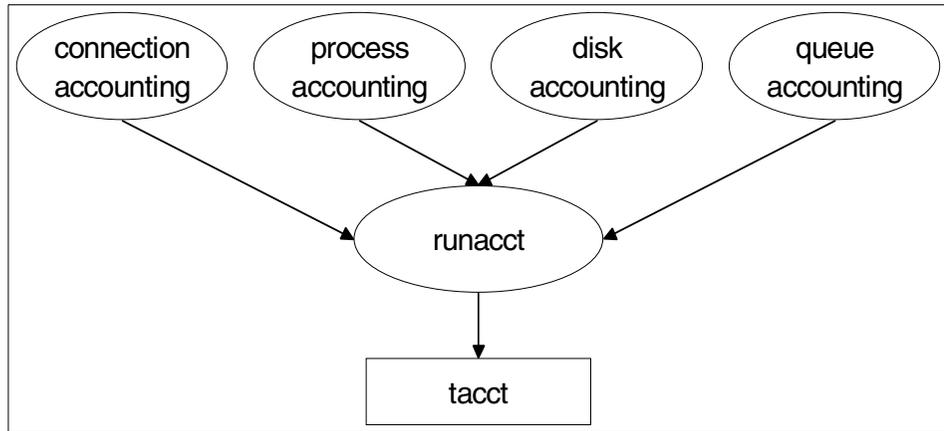


Figure 10. Overall view of the usage gathering process

In the following four sections, we describe how AIX generates the accounting information for each type of usage data. In Section 3.1.8, “Consolidation of the accounting data” on page 57, we discuss how the `runacct` command consolidates the accounting data into `tacct` files.

### 3.1.4 Connection accounting

The accounting system collects the time users were connected to the system. It gathers such information from the `/var/adm/wtmp` and `/etc/utmp` files. The structure of both files can be found in Appendix B.2, “The wtmp file” on page 153.

The `/etc/utmp` file contains a record of the users *currently* logged into the system plus some information about the init processes. But the information in `utmp` is transient, being lost after a system shutdown, and it is not accumulative. Thus, the accounting system requires a second file, `/var/adm/wtmp`, which accumulates practically the same data as `utmp`.

#### 3.1.4.1 The init daemon

The init daemon is the main maintainer of the `utmp` and `wtmp` files. During startup, init re-initializes the `utmp` file and writes boot time information to both files. It also writes information about the processes it starts (defined in `/etc/inittab`), including the `getty` processes. The `getty` process initializes a terminal connected to the system and waits for a user to log in, writing a corresponding record in the `utmp` file.

After a user logs in successfully, the `getty` process, already transformed into a login process, writes a *user process* record to the `utmp` and `wtmp` files to inform that a user connection has begun. This record contains the user name, the device name, and the login time. When the user's shell exits, `init`, being its parent, receives the corresponding signal and consequently writes a *dead process* record to both files informing that the user connection has ended. This record contains the device name and the logout time.

Notice that `init` overwrites the corresponding user process record with the new dead process record in the `utmp` file. On the other hand, `init` appends that dead process record to the end of the `wtmp` file. In this manner, the accounting system, as described in a subsequent section, can extract from the `wtmp` file the relevant connection information: user name, device name, connection starting time, and connection ending time.

#### **3.1.4.2 Remote and X11 sessions**

The procedure above is repeated by all other daemons and processes that start a new user connection, such as `telnetd`, `rlogind`, `dtlogin`, `aixterm`, and `xdm`. The X11 processes behave slightly different since they do not invoke the login program to log the user in, thus being responsible for writing both user process and dead process records to the `utmp` and `wtmp` files.

#### **3.1.4.3 Other actions**

Other system components also generate records that are used by AIX accounting. The `date` command, for example, when changing the system's date and time, writes two records to the `utmp` and `wtmp` files, informing the *old time* and the *new time*. In addition, when the system is shut down, both the `halt` and `reboot` commands write a record to the `wtmp` file with the appropriate information.

The accounting related actions involving the `utmp` and `wtmp` files are summarized in Figure 11 on page 53.

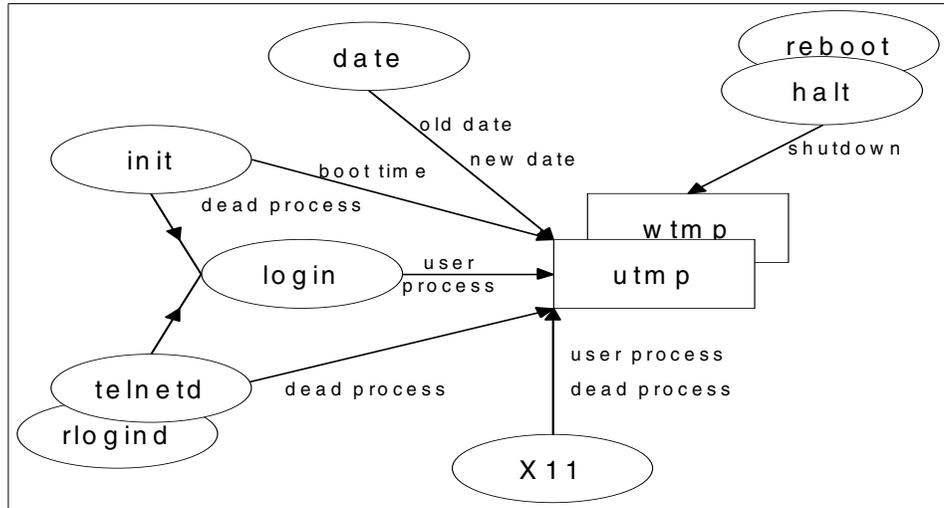


Figure 11. Gathering of connection accounting data

### 3.1.5 Process accounting

The accounting system needs to collect the resources used by the users' processes: CPU time, memory, and I/O counts. To gather these resources, the accounting system needs the assistance of the kernel. The kernel, whenever a process exits, appends a record with the process' accounting information to the process accounting file, normally `/var/adm/pacct`. The structure of this file can be found in Appendix B.3, "The `pacct` file" on page 154.

#### 3.1.5.1 Starting accounting

The AIX kernel does not generate process accounting data by default. To start the data gathering process, the kernel's `acct` subroutine should be invoked. This subroutine has one parameter that is the name of an existing file that contains the process accounting records. The `acct` subroutine opens the file, after which the kernel starts appending the accounting information to it. The accounting system provides a command that calls the `acct` subroutine, `/usr/sbin/acct/accton`, whose parameter is the name of the process accounting file.

#### 3.1.5.2 Stopping accounting

To turn process accounting off, the `acct` subroutine (and therefore the `accton` command) has to be invoked with a null parameter. When called with a null

parameter, acct closes the accounting file, informing the kernel's process exit subroutines that accounting should not take place.

Figure 12 depicts process accounting:

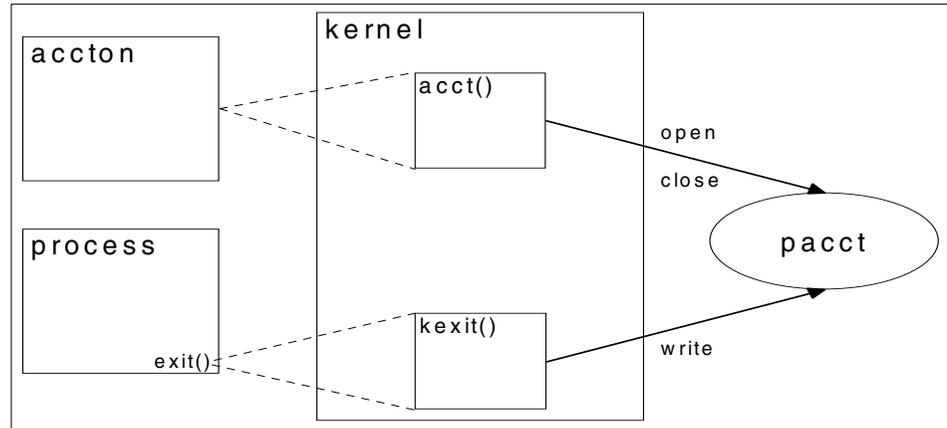


Figure 12. Gathering of process accounting data

Process accounting is automatically shut off by the `shutdown` command. It does so by calling the `/usr/sbin/acct/shutacct` command while it is stopping the system's processes. The `shutacct` command, besides writing a record to the `/var/adm/wtmp` file, calls the `/usr/sbin/acct/turnacct` command to turn process accounting off. The `turnacct` command, in turn, is an interface to the `accton` command.

**Note**

If you use the `halt` or `reboot` commands to shut down your system, process accounting (as well as other system activities) will not be rightfully terminated, causing a possible loss of information. If you want to make sure no process accounting data is lost, you should run the `shutacct` command before the `halt` or `reboot` commands.

**3.1.5.3 Managing the log size**

One final aspect of the implementation of process accounting is managing the size of `/var/adm/pacct`. The kernel does not control the file's size; it just appends accounting records until the file system fills up, at which point accounting is automatically turned off. The accounting system, though, provides the `/usr/sbin/acct/ckpacct` command, a script that, if ran periodically by cron, checks the disk space remaining in the file system where

`/var/adm/pacct` resides. If the free space is less than 1000 blocks, the script turns process accounting off. The script also checks the size of the `pacct` file. If the file gets larger than 500 blocks (a default that can be changed), the script renames the file to `/var/adm/paccti`, where *i* is an integer starting at 1, and switches accounting to a new and empty `/var/adm/pacct` file. This script makes use of the `turnacct` command to make the switch.

### 3.1.6 Disk accounting

The accounting system collects the number of disk blocks allocated by the users' files as an offline procedure. This is implemented by the `/usr/sbin/acct/dodisk` command, a script that is executed by cron. This script accesses the file systems you specify, gathers the disk-usage information, and stores it into the `/var/adm/acct/nite/dacct` file. This file is in the `tacct` format.

#### 3.1.6.1 Fast mode

The `dodisk` script provides two ways to gather the disk-usage data. The default is the fastest and most preferred implementation; it is shown in Figure 13.

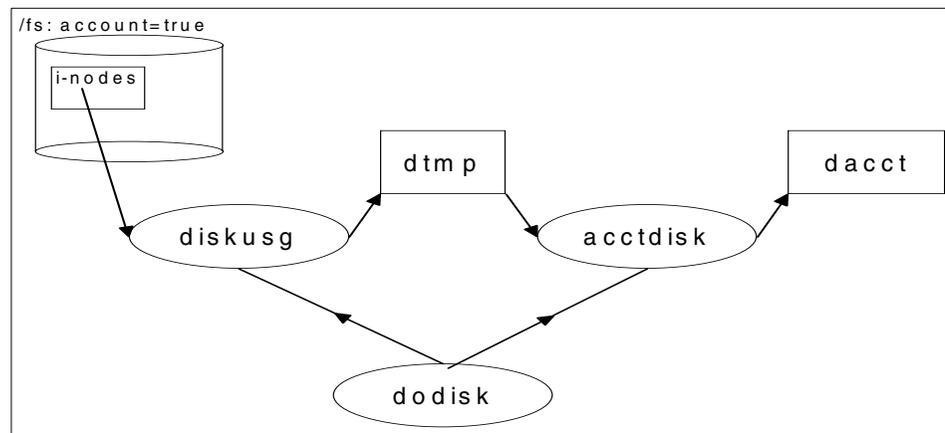


Figure 13. Gathering of disk accounting data (fast mode)

In fast mode, the `dodisk` script searches for all local file systems that have the attribute `account` set to `true` in the `/etc/filesystems` file. The script then calls the `/usr/sbin/diskusg` command with those file systems as the parameters. The `diskusg` program reads each file system's i-node table and generates disk-usage data per user. This data is written into the `/var/adm/dtmp`, a text file containing the user's uid, login name, and number of disk blocks in use.

After the `diskusg` program exits, `dodisk` executes the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctdisk` command that transforms the `dtmp` data into `tacct` format, generating the `/var/adm/acct/nite/dacct` file.

### 3.1.6.2 Slow mode

The default mode of operation of `dodisk` works fine if your disk accounting needs are restricted to whole, local file systems. But if you need to gather disk-usage information across remote NFS or DFS file systems, or maybe collect information from a subset of a local file system, you need to set up the slow mode operation of the `dodisk` script (the `-o` flag).

In slow mode, you specify the directories to be searched as parameters to the `dodisk` script. It enumerates all files in those directories (using the `find` command) and feeds those file names to the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctdusg` command, which generates the `/var/adm/dtmp` file. Then the `acctdisk` program is invoked to generate the `/var/adm/acct/nite/dacct` file. This whole process is shown in Figure 14.

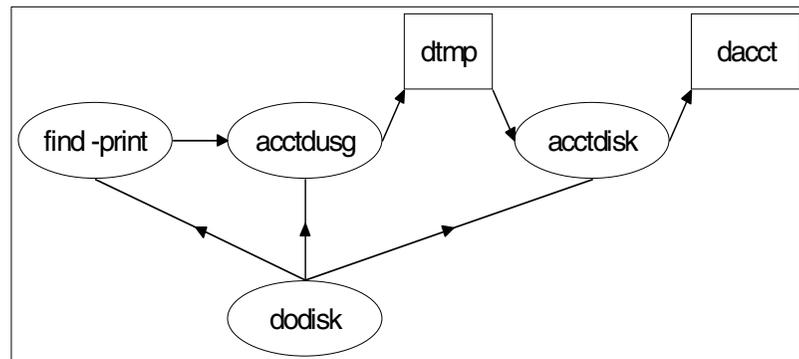


Figure 14. Gathering of disk accounting data (slow mode)

### 3.1.7 Queue accounting

The print-usage information (number of printed pages) is gathered by the queueing daemon (`qdaemon`) at the end of the print job. Queue accounting, such as process accounting, is not collected by default. For usage information to be collected for printing, you have to specify in the `/etc/qconfig` file the name of the printer's accounting file. The accounting file contains the user's name, the job's date, and the number of pages printed. The structure of the `qacct` file can be found in Appendix B.4, "The `qacct` file" on page 155.

#### Requirement

When gathering data for the AIX accounting system, you should have a *single* queue accounting file for *all* printers. This file should be named `/var/adm/qacct`.

#### 3.1.7.1 Queue accounting limitations

You should know that printer accounting does not work in all printing environments. Therefore, a more in-depth explanation of how the queuing system calculates the number of pages printed by a job is in order. You will then be able to verify whether the system will or will not collect printer-usage data.

The queuing component that calculates the number of pages printed by a job is the `/usr/lib/lpd/pio/etc/pioformat` program. The `pioformat` program is the device-independent formatter driver for the queuing system. It is called by `/usr/lib/lpd/piobe` and dynamically loads, links, and drives the appropriate device-dependent formatter to process the job's specific data stream type (such as PostScript, ASCII, GL, or PCL). Now, `pioformat` calculates the number of pages printed *only* if it is responsible for transforming the input data stream into the printer's data stream type. In other words, `pioformat` does *not* calculate the number of pages printed if it has been called with the pass-through option or is using the pass-through formatter.

So, in which situations does printer accounting function? When you are using a PCL or ASCII printer. If your printer is a PostScript printer, you will not be able to gather printer usage data. That is the case even if you are printing an ASCII file, since the transformation from ASCII to PostScript is done by the `/usr/bin/enscript` command, not by `pioformat`.

You should be aware of one further detail. Printer accounting also does not work if the queue's backend processor does not call `pioformat`, even if it is a PCL or ASCII printer. That is the case when you define a remote printer with no local filtering. The backend processor for such print queues is `/usr/lib/lpd/rembak`, which does not call `pioformat`.

#### 3.1.8 Consolidation of the accounting data

The `/usr/sbin/acct/runacct` command is the central component of the accounting system. The `runacct` script gathers usage information from the files described in the preceding sections and generates several accounting files. This script should be run daily by cron. During normal processing, the `runacct` script is run without parameters. The script's parameters are used to

restart the script after an unexpected error, as described in Section Section 3.4.5, “Restarting runacct” on page 104.

We will summarize the main actions of the runacct script in the following sections. Note that most files used by the command are in the /var/adm/acct directory, while a few can be found in the /var/adm directory. The /var/adm/acct directory is composed of three subdirectories:

- The nite subdirectory contains temporary files (files created and removed during the execution of runacct) and transient files (files that are removed during the script’s next execution).
- The sum subdirectory contains the permanent output files of the runacct script.
- The fiscal subdirectory contains the files generated by the /usr/sbin/acct/monacct command, described in Section Section 3.1.9, “Monthly accounting” on page 63.

In the following discussion, all references to the accounting files are relative to the /var/adm/acct directory, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.1.8.1 The execution states

The execution of the runacct script is divided into precisely defined sequential steps. Each execution step (state) is named, and the script writes onto the nite/statefile file the step that it is currently executing. In this way, troubleshooting and recovery can be more easily achieved; the contents of nite/statefile always tell you at which point in its execution of runacct that it stopped, and you can set the script at which point (state) you want to restart its execution. Troubleshooting is discussed in Section Section 3.4.5, “Restarting runacct” on page 104.

The runacct script starts execution by making some initial checks. For example: it checks whether it is already running or whether it has already been run that day. Then it sets the state to SETUP and enters its first execution step.

### 3.1.8.2 The SETUP state

In this step, the runacct script freezes the dynamically generated connection and process data.

Using the turnacct program, the script renames the /var/adm/pacct file, creating a new and empty process accounting file. Then all current files in the form /var/adm/pacct*i* are renamed to /var/adm/Spacct*i.date*, where *date* is the current date in the *mdd* format. In this manner, process accounting files from different days can be differentiated in case of an unexpected problem.

The script also copies the `/var/adm/wtmp` file as `nite/wtmp.date` and creates a new and empty `wtmp` file. Then, using the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctwtmp` command, it writes marker records to both `nite/wtmp.date` and `/var/adm/wtmp` to account for the open sessions at the time the `wtmp` file was frozen. The information about the open sessions is taken from the `/etc/utmp` file.

### 3.1.8.3 The WTMPFIX state

The next step of the `runacct` script adjusts the connection data in `nite/wtmp.date`. To do so, it calls the `/usr/sbin/acct/wtmpfix` command. This program checks whether the login names are printable or not. If a non-printable character is found, the corresponding login name is changed to `INVALID`. It also searches the input file for date change records. Then, on a second pass through the file, it adjusts the time of the file records, so those time changes are taken into account. The output of the command is the `nite/tmpwtmp` file.

### 3.1.8.4 The CONNECT1 state

In this step, `runacct` transforms the login and logoff records in the `nite/tmpwtmp` file into session records, calculating the time each user was connected to the system. All the work in this step is done by the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctcon1` command. This program, takes the `nite/tmpwtmp` file as input and generates three files:

- The `nite/ctmp` file is a text file with the user sessions for the day. Each session record contains the session time (in seconds) during prime-time hours and during non-prime-time hours.

#### Note

The `acctcon1` program, as well as the `acctprc1` and `acctcms` programs, read the `/etc/acct/holidays` file to distinguish between prime and non-prime hours. The usage of this file is discussed in Section Section 3.2.9, “Defining the billing periods” on page 76.

- The `nite/lineuse` file is a text file with a summary of terminal usage. For each terminal used during that day, the file contains usage statistics, such as the number of minutes the terminal was in use.
- The `nite/reboots` file is a text file with a summary of the exception records found in the `nite/tmpwtmp` file. This file contains the number of occurrences of date change, boot, and accounting records. Those accounting records are markers written by the `runacct` script, and the `acctcon1` program, to correctly account for the sessions open at the time the `/var/adm/wtmp` file was frozen.

### 3.1.8.5 The CONNECT2 state

Now the runacct script calls the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctcon2` command to transform the information in the `nite/ctmp` file into the tacct format. The `acctcon2` program stores the user's uid and name, as well as the session's connection times (prime and non-prime) in minutes, generating the `nite/ctacct.date` file.

### 3.1.8.6 The PROCESS state

This next step transforms the process accounting files into tacct format. For each process accounting file (`/var/adm/Spaccti.date`) the script calls the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctprc1` command. This program reads the process accounting files and generates a text output with the user's uid and login name, CPU times (prime and non-prime) in seconds, average memory used by the program in KB, number of characters transferred, and number of disk blocks read or written. The `acctprc1` command gets the user's login name from the `nite/ctmp` file. The program's output is then fed into the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctprc2` command, which transforms that data into tacct format, generating the file `nite/ptaccti.date`.

### 3.1.8.7 The MERGE state

The runacct script now merges the connection time data (`nite/ctacct.date`) with the process usage data (`ptaccti.date`) into a single tacct file, `nite/daytacct`. The merge is done by calling the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctmerge` command.

### 3.1.8.8 The FEES state

In this step, extra service charges are merged into the `nite/daytacct` file. The extra services are kept in the `/var/adm/fee` file. The `/var/adm/fee` file is a text tacct file, which the `acctmerge` program merges with the `nite/daytacct` file.

### 3.1.8.9 The DISK state

Now the disk accounting file, `nite/dacct`, is merged into the `nite/daytacct` file. After the merge, the runacct script removes the `nite/dacct` file.

### 3.1.8.10 The QUEUEACCT state

In this step, the queue accounting file, `/var/adm/qacct`, is merged into the `nite/daytacct` file. Then the `/var/adm/qacct` is removed and a new, empty file is created.

At this point, the total accounting file for the day is completed. Figure 15 on page 61 shows a summary of the generation of that file and other important output files in the `/var/adm/acct/nite` directory.

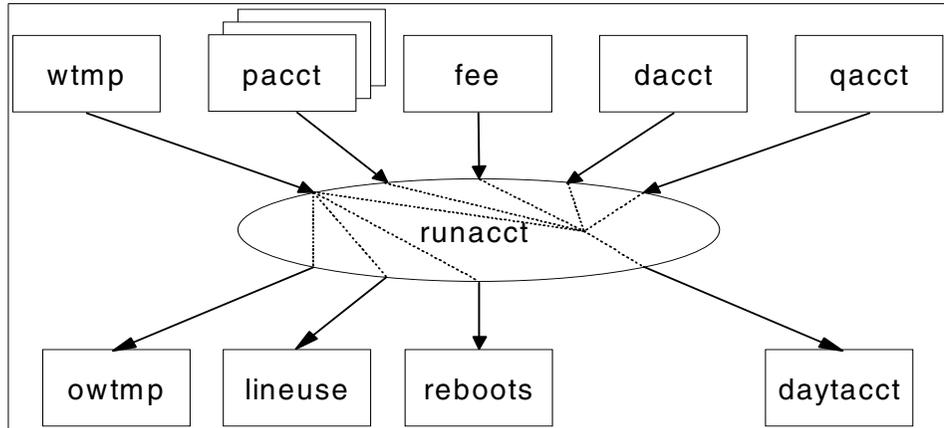


Figure 15. Generation of the /var/adm/acct/nite/daytacct file

### 3.1.8.11 The MERGETACCT state

In this state, the runacct script updates the sum subdirectory with the day's accounting information. First the nite/daytacct file is copied to sum/tacctdate. Then nite/daytacct is merged into sum/tacct, the file containing the accumulated usage data. The script saves the previous version of sum/tacct in the file sum/tacctprev.

### 3.1.8.12 The CMS state

At this point the script generates two different kinds of accounting files: The command summaries and the last login information.

#### *The command summary files*

The total accounting files generated by the accounting system gather together the usage information per user. On the other hand, the command summary files contain total usage information per command. This total usage information includes:

- The name of the command
- The number of times the command was executed
- Total prime and non-prime CPU time in minutes
- Total prime and non-prime real (elapsed) time in minutes
- Total prime and non-prime memory usage in KB times minutes
- Total prime and non-prime characters transferred
- Total prime and non-prime disk blocks read and written

The exact structure of the command summary files can be found in Appendix B.5, "The cms file" on page 155.

The runacct scripts uses the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctcms` command to create the command summary files. First it creates the `sum/daycms` file from the `Spaccti.date` files. Then it merges the day's command summary into `sum/cms`, the file containing the accumulated command summary. The previous contents of `sum/cms` are saved in the `sum/cmsprev` file.

Finally, the scripts generates two command summary reports in the `nite` directory: the `nite/daycms` text file with the 50 commands that consumed the most memory that day, and the `nite/cms` text file, which contains the 50 commands that consumed the most memory overall.

**The last login information**

The runacct script also generates a file with the date of the last login for all system users. The accounting system needs to generate this file; otherwise, the last login information AIX normally maintains through the use of the `/var/adm/wtmp` file would be lost. (The `last` command uses the `/var/adm/wtmp` to get the last login information, and this file is removed by runacct.)

The work is done by the `/usr/sbin/acct/lastlogin` command, that updates the `sum/loginlog` file with the connection information in the `nite/ctacct.date` file. The `sum/loginlog` is a text file containing the date of last login (00-00-00 if the user never logged in) and the user's login name. It is sorted by login date.

Figure 16 describes (ignoring some of the intermediate files utilized) the generation of the files in the `sum` directory by the previous two steps.

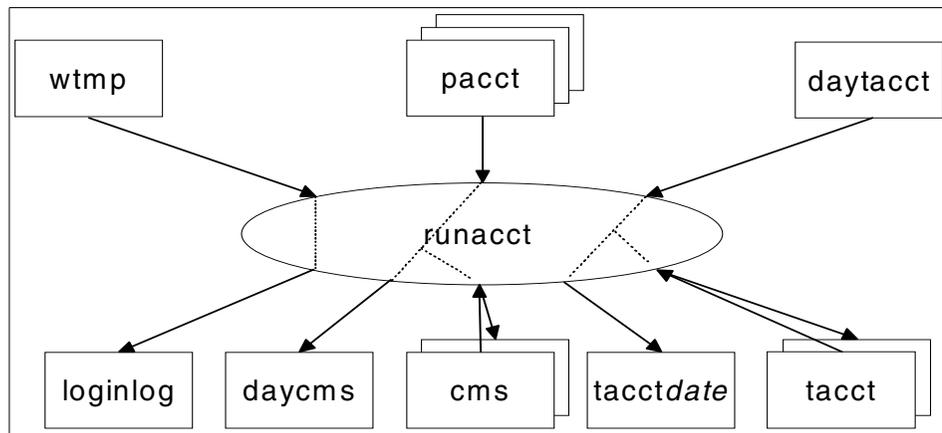


Figure 16. Generation of the `sum` directory files

### 3.1.8.13 The USEREXIT state

This step executes the `/var/adm/siteacct` command (if it exists). By creating the resultant file, you can add your own accounting procedures to the daily script.

### 3.1.8.14 The CLEANUP state

In this final step, the script removes most of the intermediate files created during its execution. A significant exception is the `nite/tmpwtmp` file, which is renamed to `nite/owtmp`. Thus, the `nite/owtmp` file contains the previous day's connection data.

The scripts also removes the `/var/adm/fee` file, creating a new and empty one.

At this point, the script executes the `/usr/sbin/acct/prdaily` command, which creates a report named `sum/rprtdate`. This file contains all the relevant data gathered by `runacct`:

- The contents of the `nite/reboots` file
- The contents of the `nite/lineuse` file
- The contents of the `nite/daytacct` file as generated by the `prtacct` command
- The contents of the `nite/daycms` file
- The contents of the `nite/cms` file
- The contents of the `sum/loginlog` file

#### Note

You should note that, with the exception of the contents of the `nite/daytacct` file (saved as `sum/tacctdate`), the `sum/rprtdate` file saves the contents of files that would otherwise be lost, that is, overwritten during the next execution of the `runacct` command.

### 3.1.8.15 End of runacct

The script terminates, indicating that it has completed execution by writing the string `COMPLETE` in `nite/statefile`.

## 3.1.9 Monthly accounting

With the `runacct` command, you gather daily usage data. But accounting data is usually more useful when collected for longer periods, either for billing purposes or just to aggregate the usage data. The accounting system allows you to periodically gather total accounting data and command summaries. Usually this procedure is done once a month through `cron`, but you could program it to run with a different period.

The fiscal periodic accounting is implemented by the `/usr/sbin/acct/monacct` command. This script copies the `sum/tacct` and `sum/cms` files to the fiscal subdirectory. The files are copied, respectively, with the name `fiscal/tacctmm` and `fiscal/cmsmm`, where `mm` is the value of the current month. Then the script removes the original files, creating new and empty ones. The script also removes all daily files from the `sum` directory, that is, all files with name starting with `sum/tacct` and `sum/rprt`.

The `monacct` script's last action is to generate a report for the fiscal accounting period, `fiscal/fisrptmm`. This file contains:

- The total accounting report for the period
- The command summary for the period
- The last login information

The generation of the files in the fiscal subdirectory is shown in Figure 17.

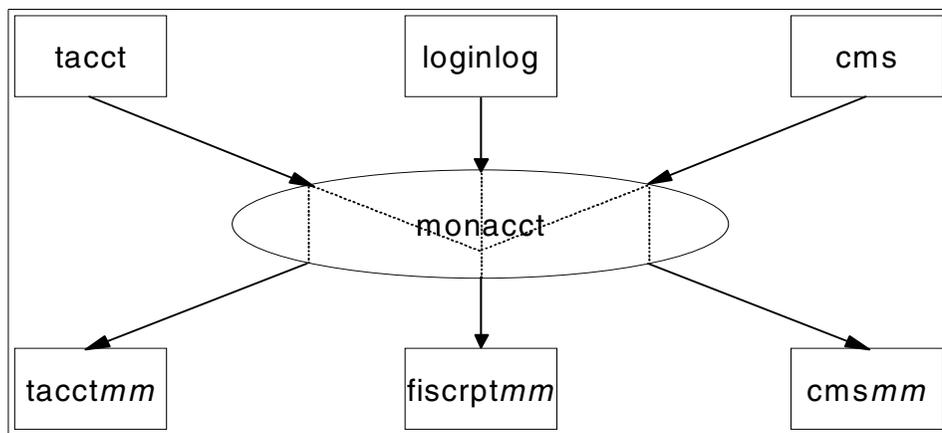


Figure 17. Generation of the fiscal subdirectory files

---

## 3.2 Setting up accounting

In this section, we will describe the steps required to start the accounting system. For in-depth justifications for the required setup procedures, please refer to Section Section 3.1, “Inside accounting” on page 49.

To execute the steps below, you should log in as root. Note, however, that the accounting procedures run under the `adm` user.

### 3.2.1 Installing the fileset

You should initially verify if the appropriate fileset is already installed. Use the command:

```
lslpp -L bos.acct
```

If it is not installed, you may install it through the WebSM interface. Run the `wsm` command to start the Launch Pad. Double click the **Software** icon. In the Software window, click **Software -> New Software (Install/Update) -> Additional Software (Custom)**, as shown in Figure 18.

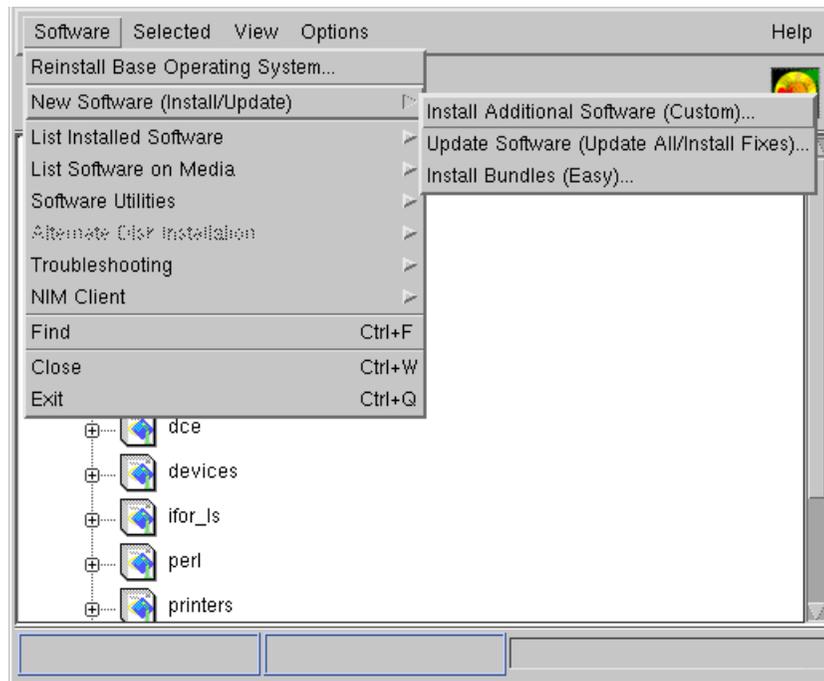


Figure 18. Selecting to install additional software through WebSM

In the ensuing dialog, select the installation media. Type the fileset to be installed and click **Add Entry** as shown in Figure 19. Click **OK** to start the installation.

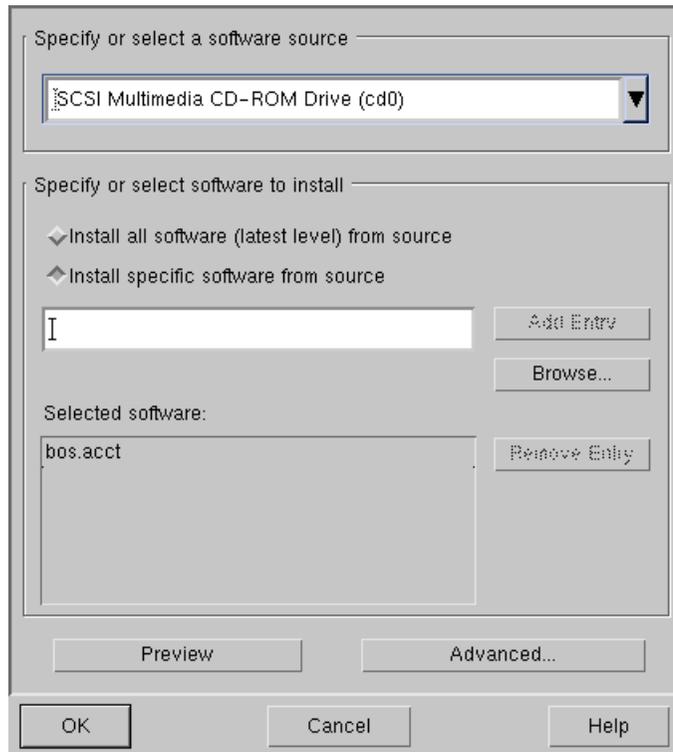


Figure 19. Selecting the software to be installed

### 3.2.2 Setting up the environment

Two of the accounting commands, `runacct` and `ckpacct`, can notify you by e-mail when an exception occurs. For this to happen, you have to set the `MAILCOM` variable in those scripts. That variable has to be set to the command that would send you mail. For example, you could use:

```
MAILCOM='mail root'
```

An easier way to set that variable is through the `/etc/environment` file. For example, you could use the following command to set the variable:

```
echo 'MAILCOM=mail root' >> /etc/environment
```

In this manner, you only need to set the variable once, without worrying about which script is using the variable, or about PTFs re-installing the accounting commands.

### 3.2.3 Creating the working directories

The fileset installation process does not create all the directories the accounting system requires. You should create these directories by hand using the following commands:

```
su - adm
cd acct
mkdir nite fiscal sum
exit
```

### 3.2.4 Updating crontab entries

All accounting jobs should run under user adm. You can modify user adm's crontab file with the command:

```
su - adm -c crontab -e
```

If you have not removed or modified the default crontab file for user adm, the entries suggested in the following sections are already in the file, but commented out, as shown below:

```
# su - adm -c crontab -l | tail -12
#=====
#      PROCESS ACCOUNTING:
# runacct at 11:10 every night
# dodisk at 11:00 every night
# ckpacct every hour on the hour
# monthly accounting 4:15 the first of every month
#=====
#10 23 * * 0-6 /usr/lib/acct/runacct 2>/usr/adm/acct/nite/accterr > /dev/null
#0 23 * * 0-6 /usr/lib/acct/dodisk > /dev/null 2>&1
#0 * * * * /usr/lib/acct/ckpacct > /dev/null 2>&1
#15 4 1 * * /usr/lib/acct/monacct > /dev/null 2>&1
#=====
```

You might (when adding an entry) just edit the existing line, removing the comment character and making any modifications you deem necessary.

Note that the sample crontab entries make reference to commands in the /usr/lib/acct directory (the original System V accounting directory), while throughout this redbook we refer to commands in the /usr/sbin/acct directory (the AIX accounting directory). You can easily verify that the files in the /usr/lib/acct directory are just links to the commands in the /usr/sbin/acct directory.

### 3.2.5 Setting up connection accounting

By default, AIX creates the `/var/adm/wtmp` file when it is first installed. But when setting up accounting, it can be a good idea to create a new and empty `wtmp` file. By starting with a fresh `wtmp` file, you avoid having your connection accounting data being skewed with old session information (assuming your system has been running for some time now).

To create a new `wtmp` file, you should use the `/usr/sbin/acct/nulladm` command, which removes the file and creates a new one.

```
/usr/sbin/acct/nulladm /var/adm/wtmp
```

If you decide not to remove the `wtmp` file, you should verify whether the file is accessible by the `adm` user or not. For example:

```
# ls -l /var/adm/wtmp
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm      10240 Jun 14 10:47 /var/adm/wtmp
```

If the output to the `ls` command is not similar to the display above you should change the ownership and permissions appropriately:

```
chown adm.adm /var/adm/wtmp
chmod ugo+r /var/adm/wtmp
chmod ug+w /var/adm/wtmp
```

### Note

If you remove the `/var/adm/wtmp` file, the last login information stored in that file will be lost. To keep that information, you can copy the contents of `/var/adm/wtmp` to another file, and only then run the `mulladm` command to create a new and pristine `/var/adm/wtmp` file. Furthermore, if you want to add the existing login data to the loginlog file (described in Section 3.1.8.12, “The CMS state” on page 61), you can use the following perl script to do so:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl
die 'file name expected' unless $#ARGV != 1;
open WTMP,$ARGV[0] or die 'could not open wtmp file';
while (sysread(WTMP,$rec,64) == 64) {
    ($user,$id,$line,$type,$pid,$termination,$exit,$time,$host) =
        unpack 'A8A14A12sis2IA16',$rec;
    next unless $type == 7;
    $time{$user} = $time if $time > $time{$user};
}
open SORT,'| sort' or die 'could not pipe sort';
select SORT;
foreach $user (keys %time) {
    $time = $time{$user};
    ($sec,$min,$hour,$mday,$mon,$year,$wday,$yday,$isdst) =
        localtime $time;
    $year = sprintf '%02d',substr($year + 1900,-1,2);
    $mon = sprintf '%02d',$mon+1;
    print "$year-$mon-$mday $user\n";
}
close SORT;
```

This perl script accepts the name of the wtmp file as its only parameter and produces the loginlog file on standard output. You can use the script (named `script`) as follows:

```
perl script /var/adm/wtmp > /var/adm/acct/sum/loginlog
```

### 3.2.6 Setting up process accounting

You can start process accounting by issuing the `/usr/sbin/acct/startup` command. The startup script creates the `/var/adm/pacct` file (if it does not exist) and calls the `turnacct` command to turn on process accounting. It also writes a record to the `/var/adm/wtmp` file.

This procedure has to be executed on every system boot; therefore, the command should be added to one of the system initialization scripts. Note

that the earlier the `startup` command is run, the better the accounting of resources used by the system initialization processes.

Thus, you should add the following line to the `/etc/rc` file.

```
su - adm -c /usr/sbin/acct/startup
```

An appropriate location for the new line is shown in the following display (for AIX 4.3.3):

```
# tail -15 /etc/rc
#MSG=`dspmsg rc.cat 7 'Write system start up record to /usr/adm/sa/sa'``date +%d
`
#echo $MSG
#/usr/bin/su - adm -c /usr/lib/sa/sadc /usr/adm/sa/sa`date +%d`
/usr/bin/su - adm -c /usr/sbin/acct/startup
# Manufacturing post install process.
# This must be at the end of this file, /etc/rc.
if [ -x /etc/mfg/rc.preload ]
then
    /etc/mfg/rc.preload
fi
dspmsg rc.cat 5 'Multi-user initialization completed\n'
exit 0
```

#### Note

If you want to start process accounting without rebooting your system, you should run the `startup` command from the command line.

#### **Adding the crontab entry**

You should also add an entry like the following to user `adm`'s crontab file:

```
0 * * * * /usr/sbin/acct/ckpacct > /dev/null 2>&1
```

The entry makes the `ckpacct` command run every hour on the hour. The `ckpacct` command manages the space used by the process accounting file as described in Section Section 3.1.5.3, "Managing the log size" on page 54.

### **3.2.7 Setting up disk accounting**

Disk accounting can be set up in one of two ways, depending on whether the directories you want to account for correspond exactly to one or more local file systems or not. If you want to gather disk space usage of local file systems only, you should start fast mode disk accounting. Otherwise, you must start slow mode disk accounting.

### 3.2.7.1 Setting up fast mode disk accounting

To start fast mode disk accounting, you should set the account attribute to true for all file systems to be accounted.

To set that attribute through the WebSM interface, double click the **File Systems** icon in Web-based System Management's launch pad. Double click the desired file system. Select the **Start disk accounting** option as shown in Figure 20. Click **OK** to apply your changes.

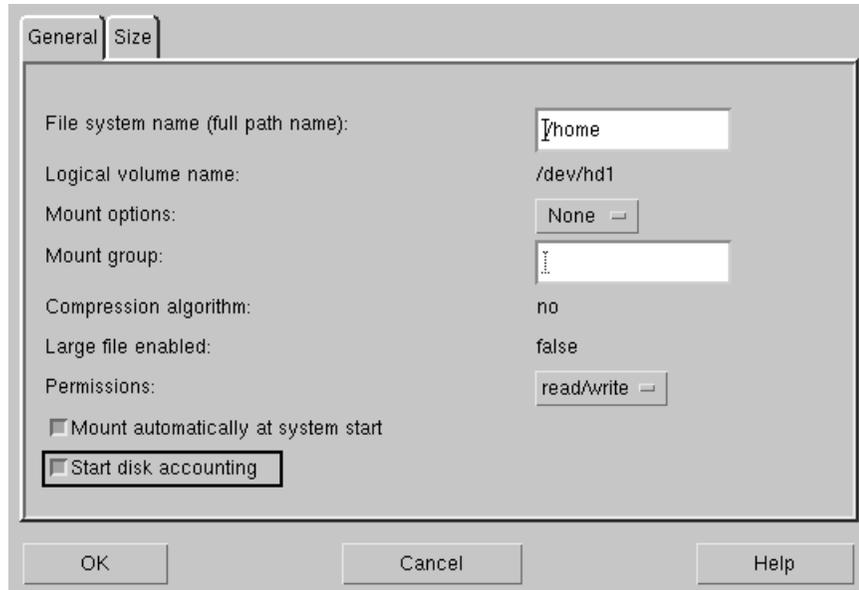


Figure 20. Configuring disk accounting through WebSM

The above actions create a new entry in the `/etc/filesystems` stanza for the file system, as shown in the following display:

```
# grep -p home /etc/filesystems
/home:
    dev          = /dev/hd1
    vfs          = jfs
    log          = /dev/hd8
    mount        = true
    check        = true
    vol          = /home
    free         = false
    account      = true
```

### **Adding the crontab entry**

Now that all file systems are correctly configured, you should add the following cron job that gathers disk accounting every evening:

```
0 23 * * 0-6 /usr/sbin/acct/dodisk > /dev/null 2>&1
```

That entry tells cron to start the `dodisk` command every night at 11:00 PM, discarding any possible output.

### **3.2.7.2 Setting up slow mode disk accounting**

If accounting for only the local file systems does not attend to your needs, you must add an entry like the following to the user `adm`'s crontab file:

```
0 23 * * 0-6 /usr/sbin/acct/dodisk -o /home > /dev/null 2>&1
```

With such an entry, the `dodisk` command gathers disk-usage data in the `/home` directory, with no consideration about where or how that directory is implemented. You can also pass more than one directory parameter to the `dodisk` command.

#### **Restriction**

In AIX's current implementation, you cannot mix both type of disk accounting methods. For example, if you need to account the contents of a local file system and the contents of a remote file system, you must use slow mode accounting, passing the mount points of both file systems as parameters to the `dodisk` command.

### **3.2.8 Setting up queue accounting**

To start accounting for a printer, you should specify that the name of the printer queue accounting file is `/var/adm/qacct`. You may use the `smit` command to do so:

```
smit pq_chque
```

After entering the name of the queue, you are presented with the window in Figure 21. Enter the name of the accounting file as shown and click **OK** to apply your changes.

|   |                        |          |
|---|------------------------|----------|
| Name of queue   | lp0                    |          |
| ACTIVATE the queue?                                       | yes                    | List ▲ ▼ |
| Queuing DISCIPLINE  | first come first serve | List ▲ ▼ |
| ACCOUNTING FILE pathname(Path)                            | /var/adm/qacct         |          |
| HOSTNAME of remote server                                 |                        |          |
| Name of QUEUE on remote server                            |                        |          |
| Pathname of the SHORT FORM FILTER for queue status output |                        | List     |
| Pathname of the LONG FORM FILTER for queue status output  |                        | List     |

OK Command Reset Cancel ?

Figure 21. Specifying the queue accounting file

The specification of the accounting file is saved in the queue's `/etc/qconfig` stanza as shown below:

```
# tail -9 /etc/qconfig
lp0:
    acctfile = /var/adm/qacct
    device = lp0
lp0:
    file = /dev/lp0
    header = never
    trailer = never
    access = both
    backend = /usr/lib/lpd/piobe
```

You can also edit the `/etc/qconfig` file instead of using `smit`, but you should not forget to use the following command to re-digest the `qconfig` file after you are done modifying it:

```
enq -d
```

### 3.2.8.1 Creating the queue accounting file

You should create the `qacct` file with the following command:

```
/usr/sbin/acct/nulladm /var/adm/qacct
```

The `nulladm` command creates a new `qacct` file with the appropriate permissions.

If you have not created the qacct by hand as previously discussed, the queuing system creates the file automatically but with the *wrong* permissions, as shown below:

```
# ls -l /var/adm/qacct
--w-r-xr--  1 root  printq  268 Jun 15 12:02 /var/adm/qacct*
```

Those default permissions allow the accounting system to read the printer-usage data, but do not allow the `runacct` command to create a new and empty qacct file.

### 3.2.8.2 Does queue accounting work?

As described in Section Section 3.1.7.1, “Queue accounting limitations” on page 57, accounting only functions with PCL or ASCII printers, and furthermore, only if those printers have the appropriate backend processor.

In the specific case of the printer shown in the preceding example, printer-usage information is collected. It is a local printer and uses the standard backend processor, `/usr/lib/lpd/piobe`. Piobe uses the `pioformat` program to format the output.

Now, if you have a standard remote printer like the one defined in the display below, accounting does not work:

```
# tail -9 /etc/qconfig
rm0:
    device = @prt3825
    up = TRUE
    host = prt3825
    s_statfilter = /usr/lib/lpd/aixshort
    l_statfilter = /usr/lib/lpd/aixlong
    rq = draft1
@prt3825:
    backend = /usr/lib/lpd/rembak
```

Notice that the printer uses the `/usr/lib/lpd/rembak` backend processor, which does not use the `pioformat` program. The same configuration would have been obtained if the remote printer was defined with NFS access to the server’s print queue attributes.

You should be aware that if you define a remote (PCL or ASCII) printer with local filtering before sending to the print server, accounting works, since the formatting is done locally (by `pioformat`). The configuration of such a printer looks something like the following display:

```
# tail -12 /etc/qconfig
text1:
    acctfile = /var/adm/qacct
    device = @prt3825
    host = prt3825
    rq = draft1
    s_statfilter = /usr/lib/lpd/aixshort
    l_statfilter = /usr/lib/lpd/aixlong
@prt3825:
    header = never
    trailer = never
    access = both
    backend = /usr/lib/lpd/pio/etc/piorlfb -f +
```

Note that this kind of printer uses a different backend processor, which calls both the piobe and the rembak programs.

An equivalent implementation can be found in IBM Network Printers, such as the IBM Network Printer 24. The configuration of such a printer is shown in the following display:

```
# tail -9 /etc/qconfig
np24pcl:
    acctfile = /var/adm/qacct
    device = ibm@np24
ibm@np24:
    file = /var/spool/lpd/pio/@local/dev/ibm@np24#ibmNetPrinter
    header = never
    trailer = never
    access = both
    backend = /usr/lib/lpd/pio/etc/pioibmnpm np24
```

As before, IBM Network Printers' backend processor calls piobe before sending the document to the network.

Is there an easy way to figure out if accounting functions, besides experimentation or checking the backend code? Our answer is a tentative yes, if during printer installation, the system asks you for the printer type, then local formatting takes place and accounting should work (for a PCL or ASCII printer, of course). For example, if you are using `smit` to install a printer, the appearance of the window in Figure 22 on page 76 should indicate that printer-usage data could be collected for that printer.

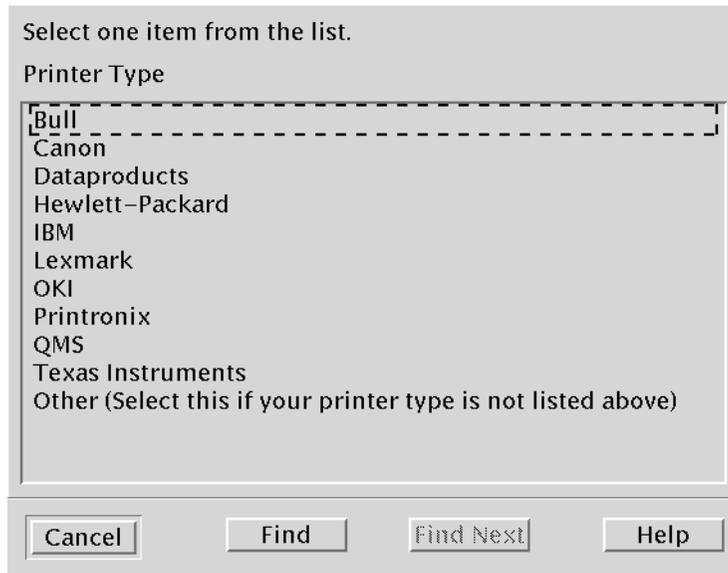


Figure 22. Selecting printer type through SMIT

### 3.2.9 Defining the billing periods

You should modify the `/etc/acct/holidays` file to indicate which hours are defined as prime-time hours and which are not. The file should also indicate when your company holidays are. The accounting system considers all hours during weekends and holidays non-prime hours.

The following display shows the default contents of the `/etc/acct/holidays`. The asterisk character at the start of a line denotes a comment.

```

# tail -20 /etc/acct/holidays
* Prime/Nonprime Table for AIX Accounting System
*
* Curr Prime Non-Prime
* Year Start Start
*
1990 0800 1700
*
* Day of Calendar Company
* Year Date Holiday
*
1 Jan 1 New Year's Day
50 Feb 19 Washington's Birthday (Obsvd.)
148 May 28 Memorial Day (Obsvd.)
185 Jul 4 Independence Day
246 Sep 3 Labor Day
326 Nov 22 Thanksgiving Day
327 Nov 23 Day after Thanksgiving
359 Dec 25 Christmas Day
365 Dec 31 New Years Eve

```

The first data line in the file contains three fields:

- The current year
- Beginning of prime time
- End of prime time

Note that times are specified using a 24-hour clock.

The next data lines describe the company holidays for the current year. Each line contains four fields:

- The day of the year
- The month
- The day of the month
- Description of the holiday

You should know that the *only* relevant field in the specification of the holidays is the first field. This field contains the number of the day of the year in which the holiday falls, and must be a number between 1 and 365 (366 if the year is a leap year). The other fields are treated as comments.

A U.S. company sample holidays file for the year 2000 follows:

```

# cat /etc/acct/holidays
2000 0900 1700
*
  1      Jan 1      New Year's Day
 51      Feb 21     Washington's Birthday (Obsvd.)
150      May 29     Memorial Day (Obsvd.)
186      Jul 4      Independence Day
248      Sep 4      Labor Day
328      Nov 23     Thanksgiving Day
329      Nov 24     Day after Thanksgiving
360      Dec 25     Christmas Day
366      Dec 31     New Years Eve

```

You should update this file every year; otherwise, chances are that the yearly holidays would be accounted for incorrectly. If you have set the MAILCOM variable, the accounting system sends you a daily e-mail when the holidays file is out-of-date. It starts doing so right after Christmas Day.

### 3.2.10 Setting up daily accounting

To start the daily accounting process you should add the following line to user adm's crontab file:

```
10 23 * * 0-6 /usr/sbin/acct/runacct 2>/var/adm/acct/nite/accterr > /dev/null
```

This line starts the `runacct` command every day at 11:10 PM. Note that the command must be run after the `dodisk` command has completed. In case you are gathering disk usage from a very large directory over the network, you would need to start the `runacct` command more than ten minutes after the `dodisk` command.

### 3.2.11 Setting up monthly accounting

To start the monthly accounting job, you should add the following line to user adm's crontab file:

```
15 4 1 * * /usr/sbin/acct/monacct > /dev/null 2>&1
```

This line starts the `monacct` command at 4:15 AM on the first day of every month.

---

## 3.3 Reading the accounting files

In this section, we describe the files managed by the accounting system, as well as some of the commands that can be used to examine those files. Please refer to Section Section 3.1, "Inside accounting" on page 49, for details of the inner workings of the accounting system.

For your reference, Table 5 lists the AIX accounting commands that are defined by the System V Interface Definition (SVID) Issue 3.

Table 5. System V accounting commands

| Command   | Function   |
|-----------|--|
| acctcms   | Produces command usage summaries from the pacct files.                     |
| acctcom   | Displays selected process accounting records.                              |
| acctcon1  | Converts login/logoff records to session records.                          |
| acctcon2  | Converts session records to total accounting records.                      |
| acctdisk  | Generates total accounting records from output of diskusg/acctdusg.        |
| acctdusg  | Generate disk accounting information.                                      |
| acctmerg  | Merges total accounting files into an intermediary file.                   |
| accton    | Turns on accounting.   |
| acctprc1  | Processes accounting information from the pacct files.                     |
| acctprc2  | Processes the output of acctprc1 into total accounting records.            |
| acctwtmp  | Writes accounting records to wtmp.   |
| chargefee | Assigns charges to login name.   |
| ckpacct   | Checks size of the pacct file.   |
| diskusg   | Generates disk accounting information.                                     |
| dodisk    | Performs disk accounting.  |
| fwtmp     | Convert wtmp records to formatted ascii.                                   |
| lastlogin | Updates the loginlog file with the last date on which each user logged in. |
| monacct   | Creates monthly summary files.   |
| nulladm   | Creates an empty accounting file.  |
| prctmp    | Print session records as produced by the acctcon1 command.                 |
| prdaily   | Formats a report of the daily accounting information.                      |
| prtacct   | Formats and prints a total accounting file.                                |
| remove    | Removes some temporary accounting files.                                   |
| runacct   | Runs daily accounting.   |
| shutacct  | Stops process accounting.  |

| Command  | Function  |
|----------|---|
| startup  | Starts process accounting.                                |
| turnacct | Turns process accounting on or off.                       |
| wtmpfix  | Corrects the time stamps in a file using the wtmp format. |

The 4.3 BSD accounting commands provided by AIX are shown in Table 6.

Table 6. BSD accounting commands

| Command  | Function   |
|----------|--|
| ac       | Connection time accounting.                          |
| accton   | Turns process accounting on or off.                  |
| last     | Indicates the last logons of users and terminals.    |
| lastcomm | Shows, in reverse order, the last commands executed. |
| pac      | Printer usage accounting.                            |
| sa       | Maintains process accounting files.                  |

We suggest, to be able to easily access the accounting commands, that you add the accounting executable directory, /usr/sbin/acct, to the shell's environment variable PATH. For example, we used the following value in subsequent sections:

```
PATH=/usr/bin:/etc:/usr/sbin:/usr/ucb:/usr/bin/X11:/sbin:/usr/sbin/acct
```

### 3.3.1 The /var/adm directory

A typical listing of the /var/adm directory is shown in the following display, highlighting the relevant accounting files:

```

# ls -lF /var/adm
total 248
-rw----- 1 adm      adm      1052 Jun 05 13:13 .sh_history
drw-r----- 2 root    system  512 Jun 20 10:37 SRC/
drwxrwxr-x  5 adm      adm      512 Jun 01 19:06 acct/
dr-xr-x---  2 bin      cron     512 Jan 27 15:05 cron/
-rw-rw-r--  1 root    system  578 Jan 27 14:55 dev_pkg.fail
-rw-r--r--  1 adm      adm     1400 Jun 19 23:00 dtmp
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm       0 Jun 19 23:10 fee
drwxrwxr-x  2 root    system  512 Jun 20 10:27 nim/
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm    107920 Jun 20 14:37 pacct
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm       0 Jun 09 23:10 qacct
drwxrwxrwt  2 root    system  512 Feb 23 15:58 ras/
drwxrwxr-x  2 adm      adm      512 Jun 01 09:10 sa/
drwxrwxr-x  2 adm      adm      512 Jan 27 14:39 streams/
-rw-----  1 root    system  4694 Jun 20 10:35 sulog
drwxr-xr-x  2 root    system  512 Jan 27 15:24 sw/
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm     3008 Jun 20 11:41 wtmp

```

The acct subdirectory contains most of the accounting files, and its contents are discussed in Section Section 3.3.2, “The nite subdirectory” on page 91, Section Section 3.3.3, “The sum subdirectory” on page 99, and Section Section 3.3.4, “The fiscal subdirectory” on page 101.

### 3.3.1.1 The dtmp file

The /var/adm/dtmp file is a temporary file used by the dodisk script. The script does not remove the file after being done with it. The dtmp file contains disk accounting information (uid, login name, and number of disk blocks) as shown in the following display:

```

# cat dtmp
 0   root   1
 2   bin    1
100  guest  1
201  gonzalo 7729
202  rose   777
203  vanel  724

```

### 3.3.1.2 The fee file

The fee file contains the extra service charges. You should charge extra services through the /usr/sbin/acct/chargefee command, which appends the charge to the /var/adm/fee file. The following display shows the use of the chargefee command and the resulting fee file:

```
# chargefee gonzalo 100
# cat fee
201 gonzalo 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 100 0 0 0
```

### 3.3.1.3 The pacct files

The pacct file contains the current process accounting data. Because the `ckpacct` command keeps this file from growing too large, a busy system may have several pacct files. All but the current file have the name `paccti`, where *i* represents an integer.

#### The acctcom command

Most of the contents of the pacct file can be displayed with the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctcom` command. This command has several flags to filter the input and modify the output. Please refer to the *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference, Volume 1, SBOF-1877* for further information. The default output of the `acctcom` command is shown in the following display:

```
# acctcom | head -20
```

| COMMAND  |      |         | START    | END      | REAL   | CPU    | MEAN     |
|----------|------|---------|----------|----------|--------|--------|----------|
| NAME     | USER | TTYNAME | TIME     | TIME     | (SECS) | (SECS) | SIZE (K) |
| accton   | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.02   | 0.02   | 252.00   |
| bsh      | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.19   | 0.02   | 146.00   |
| mv       | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.03   | 0.02   | 218.00   |
| mv       | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.02   | 0.02   | 60.00    |
| cp       | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.02   | 0.02   | 194.00   |
| acctwtmp | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.00   | 0.00   | 0.00     |
| fwtmp    | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.06   | 0.02   | 86.00    |
| awk      | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.06   | 0.03   | 261.00   |
| sed      | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.05   | 0.00   | 0.00     |
| fwtmp    | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.11   | 0.02   | 164.00   |
| cp       | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.02   | 0.00   | 0.00     |
| chmod    | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.02   | 0.02   | 192.00   |
| chown    | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.03   | 0.02   | 153.00   |
| bsh      | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.11   | 0.02   | 132.00   |
| acctwtmp | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.02   | 0.02   | 222.00   |
| fwtmp    | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.06   | 0.02   | 142.00   |
| awk      | adm  | ?       | 23:10:01 | 23:10:01 | 0.05   | 0.02   | 262.00   |

For each record in the file, the `acctcom` command displays the following fields:

- The name of the command (preceded by the # character if running with super-user privileges).
- The login name of the user who ran the command.
- The controlling terminal of the command, if any.
- The time the command started.
- The time the command ended.

- The number of seconds the command stayed in the system.
- The number of seconds of CPU the command used.
- The average memory size of the command in KB.

### **The lastcomm command**

You can also use the `/usr/bin/acct/lastcomm` command to browse the contents of the `pacct` file. Note in the following display that, besides showing the records in reverse order, the records are formatted differently:

```
# lastcomm | head -17
dtexec S root --- 0.20 secs Tue Jun 20 17:08
dtscreen S root --- 0.20 secs Tue Jun 20 17:08
dtexec S root --- 0.17 secs Tue Jun 20 17:05
dtscreen S root --- 0.17 secs Tue Jun 20 17:05
dtexec S root --- 0.19 secs Tue Jun 20 17:02
dtscreen S root --- 0.17 secs Tue Jun 20 17:02
dtexec S root --- 0.17 secs Tue Jun 20 16:59
dtscreen S root --- 0.19 secs Tue Jun 20 16:59
bsh adm --- 0.09 secs Tue Jun 20 17:00
rm adm --- 0.01 secs Tue Jun 20 17:00
sed adm --- 0.01 secs Tue Jun 20 17:00
du adm --- 0.02 secs Tue Jun 20 17:00
awk adm --- 0.05 secs Tue Jun 20 17:00
df adm --- 0.01 secs Tue Jun 20 17:00
ln adm --- 0.01 secs Tue Jun 20 17:00
chmod adm --- 0.01 secs Tue Jun 20 17:00
cp adm --- 0.01 secs Tue Jun 20 17:00
```

The `lastcomm` command displays the following values:

- The name of the command.
- Flags giving additional information about the command's execution:
  - S: executed with super-user privileges
  - F: ran after a fork, but without an ensuing exec
  - C: ran in PDP-11 compatibility mode
  - D: terminated with the generation of a core file
  - X: was terminated with a signal
- The login name of the user who ran the command.
- The controlling terminal of the command, if any.
- The number of CPU seconds the command used.
- The command's start time.

Please refer to the *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference, Volume 3*, SBOF-1877, for further information about the `lastcomm` command.

### **The acctcms command**

You can also obtain command summaries from the `pacct` files with the `-a` flag of the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctcms` command. The `acctcms` command generates a

summary of the resources used by each command. By default, the command displays the summaries in decreasing order of total memory usage. A sample output follows:

```
# acctcms -a pacct | head -20
```

| COMMAND NAME | NUMBER CMDS | TOTAL KCOREMIN | TOTAL COMMAND SUMMARY |                |             |              |            |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|----------------|-----------------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
|              |             |                | TOTAL CPU-MIN         | TOTAL REAL-MIN | MEAN SIZE-K | MEAN CPU-MIN | HOG FACTOR | CHARS TRNSFD | BLOCKS READ |
| TOTALS       | 872         | 212.36         | 1.43                  | 1360.27        | 148.86      | 0.00         | 0.10       | 9.412e+07    | 0.00        |
| dtsscreen    | 226         | 99.25          | 0.68                  | 678.97         | 145.40      | 0.00         | 0.10       | 4.861e+07    | 0.00        |
| dtexec       | 226         | 94.68          | 0.63                  | 679.88         | 150.92      | 0.00         | 0.09       | 4.216e+07    | 0.00        |
| bsh          | 43          | 4.59           | 0.03                  | 0.23           | 161.82      | 0.00         | 12.47      | 529699.00    | 0.00        |
| awk          | 14          | 1.89           | 0.01                  | 0.01           | 302.29      | 0.00         | 55.81      | 66769.00     | 0.00        |
| acctprc1     | 2           | 1.34           | 0.00                  | 0.01           | 271.63      | 0.00         | 57.58      | 284480.00    | 0.00        |
| ksh          | 12          | 1.09           | 0.00                  | 0.17           | 280.00      | 0.00         | 2.30       | 107913.00    | 0.00        |
| sa           | 9           | 1.08           | 0.01                  | 0.01           | 180.83      | 0.00         | 76.67      | 418824.00    | 0.00        |
| acctcms      | 8           | 0.81           | 0.00                  | 0.01           | 163.37      | 0.00         | 73.08      | 377568.00    | 0.00        |
| cut          | 33          | 0.65           | 0.01                  | 0.02           | 99.32       | 0.00         | 31.65      | 205454.00    | 0.00        |
| odmget       | 14          | 0.56           | 0.00                  | 0.01           | 112.74      | 0.00         | 42.22      | 169064.00    | 0.00        |
| chown        | 12          | 0.55           | 0.00                  | 0.01           | 151.57      | 0.00         | 58.33      | 39168.00     | 0.00        |
| rm           | 21          | 0.49           | 0.00                  | 0.01           | 144.23      | 0.00         | 39.39      | 18592.00     | 0.00        |
| acctprc2     | 2           | 0.46           | 0.00                  | 0.01           | 146.67      | 0.00         | 34.29      | 163496.00    | 0.00        |
| cp           | 30          | 0.42           | 0.00                  | 0.01           | 107.33      | 0.00         | 48.39      | 16680.00     | 0.00        |

The output of the `acctcms` command is composed of the following fields:

- **COMMAND NAME:** The name of the command.
- **NUMBER CMDS:** The number of times the command executed.
- **TOTAL KCOREMIN:** The accumulated memory used by the command's executions in KB times minutes.
- **TOTAL CPU-MIN:** The accumulated CPU time for the command's executions in minutes.
- **TOTAL REAL-MIN:** The accumulated time (in minutes) the command stayed in the system.
- **MEAN SIZE-K:** The average memory used by the command in KB.
- **MEAN CPU-MIN:** The average CPU time the command used in minutes.
- **HOG FACTOR:** An indication of how intensively the CPU was used by the command, given by the equation:
 
$$\frac{\text{TOTAL CPU-MIN}}{\text{TOTAL REAL-MIN}} \times 100$$
- **CHARS TRNSFD:** The total number of characters transferred by the command.
- **BLOCKS READ:** The total number of disk blocks read or written by the command.

You may obtain additional information about the `acctcms` command in the *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference, Volume 1, SBOF-1877*.

### The sa command

In summarizing the process accounting data in the `pacct` file, you have another alternative: the `/usr/sbin/sa` command. The `sa` command has several flags to specify the information desired in the report, as described in *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference Manual, Volume 5*, SBOF-1877. The `sa` command can display the following fields:

- The number of times the command executed.
- The accumulated time (in minutes) the command stayed in the system (`re`).
- The accumulated CPU time used by all the command's executions (in minutes) (`cpu`).
- The accumulated user CPU time used by all the command's executions (in minutes) (`u`).
- The accumulated system CPU time used by all the command's executions (in minutes) (`s`).
- The accumulated memory usage by all the program's executions in KB times seconds (`k*sec`).
- According to the manual, the average KB of CPU-time execution (`k`).
- The total number of characters transferred by all the program's executions (`tio`).
- The average number of characters transferred by a program execution (`avio`).

In the following display we show a sample output of the `sa` command taken immediately after the execution of the `acctcms` command displayed in the previous display. The summary information is practically the same, so you can compare the output of both commands.

```
# sa -K | head -15
874    1360.28re    1.43cpu    107774avio    12752k*sec
226     678.97re    0.68cpu    215104avio    5955k*sec    dtexec
226     679.88re    0.63cpu    186560avio    5681k*sec    dtexec
28      0.22re     0.03cpu    18864avio     276k*sec     bsh
14      0.01re     0.01cpu    4769avio      113k*sec     awk
2       0.01re     0.00cpu    142240avio    81k*sec      acctprc1
2       0.17re     0.00cpu    28300avio     66k*sec      ksh
9       0.01re     0.01cpu    46536avio     65k*sec      sa
9       0.01re     0.01cpu    48820avio     58k*sec      acctcms
33     0.02re     0.01cpu    6226avio      39k*sec      cut
14     0.01re     0.00cpu    12076avio     33k*sec      odmget
12     0.01re     0.00cpu    3264avio      33k*sec      chown
21     0.01re     0.00cpu    885avio       29k*sec      rm
2      0.01re     0.00cpu    81748avio     28k*sec      acctprc2
30     0.01re     0.00cpu    556avio       25k*sec      cp
```

We used the `-K` flag to sort the output by the accumulated memory usage, like the `acctcms` command. Note that the first line contains the totals.

You should be careful with the `k` field output by `sa` (not appearing in the previous display). This field is *not* the average memory used by the command. In reality, it is the average memory allocated divided by 100 (the number of clock interrupts per second in the RS/6000).

When using the `sa` command, we advise against using the `-s` flag, since it will cause the `pacct` file to be removed afterwards. This flag should only be used if you are not using the standard AIX accounting facilities and you want to keep a command summary file managed by the `sa` command.

The `sa` command can produce other type of reports besides command summaries. For example, the `-m` flag creates a summary per user, while the `-u` flag dumps the contents of the `pacct` file (much like the `acctcom` command). The following two displays show examples of those two kind of reports:

```
# sa -m
root      1767      1.76cpu 106864561tio      14822k*sec
adm       304       0.08cpu 1565259tio        804k*sec
gonzalo   991       0.44cpu 5163845tio        2016k*sec
rose      193       0.06cpu 1165125tio        339k*sec
```

```
# sa -u | head -20
4  0.02 cpu      252k mem      0 io  accton
4  0.02 cpu      146k mem     1721 io  bsh
4  0.02 cpu      218k mem      0 io  mv
4  0.02 cpu       60k mem      0 io  mv
4  0.02 cpu      194k mem    1536 io  cp
4  0.00 cpu       0k mem       64 io  acctwtmp
4  0.02 cpu       86k mem    5133 io  fwtmp
4  0.03 cpu     261k mem    7938 io  awk
4  0.00 cpu       0k mem    1130 io  sed
4  0.02 cpu     164k mem     885 io  fwtmp
4  0.00 cpu       0k mem      0 io  cp
4  0.02 cpu     192k mem      0 io  chmod
4  0.02 cpu     153k mem    3264 io  chown
4  0.02 cpu     132k mem    1277 io  bsh
4  0.02 cpu     222k mem      64 io  acctwtmp
4  0.02 cpu     142k mem    5133 io  fwtmp
4  0.02 cpu     262k mem    7938 io  awk
4  0.00 cpu       0k mem     885 io  fwtmp
4  0.00 cpu       0k mem   4118 io  dspmsg
4  0.02 cpu     222k mem     16 io  cat
```

The first column in the report by `sa -u` is the user's uid. Observe that this report correctly displays the average memory used by each command.

### 3.3.1.4 The qacct file

The qacct file contains the queue accounting records. The `/usr/sbin/pac` command can be used to extract summary information from that file as shown in the following display. The `pac` command displays the user's login name, the number of pages printed, the number of print jobs, and the total cost of the print jobs.

| # pac | pages/feet | runs | price   |
|-------|------------|------|---------|
| Login |            |      |         |
| root  | 12.00      | 6    | USD .24 |
| rose  | 4.00       | 2    | USD .08 |
| total | 16.00      | 8    | USD .32 |

Note that the `pac` command, by default, reads the accounting file of the default printer (which we assume you set to `/var/adm/qacct`). Observe also that the price column assumes a price per page which is arbitrarily set by the `pac` command. For further details about the command, please refer to *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference, Volume 4, SBOF-1877*.

### 3.3.1.5 The wtmp file

The wtmp file stores information about the init processes and user sessions, as described in Section Section 3.1.4, "Connection accounting" on page 51.

#### **The fwtmp command**

You can examine the contents of the wtmp file (or any file in the utmp format for that matter) with the `/usr/sbin/acct/fwtmp` command. The output of `fwtmp` contains the following fields:

1. Login name for a new session, init process identification for a new process, or empty for a dead session or dead process
2. Init process identification (same as the next column for pseudo-terminal sessions)
3. Terminal device name or additional information
4. Record type:
  - a. Init run level is 1
  - b. Boot time is 2
  - c. Old date is 3
  - d. New date is 4
  - e. Init process is 5
  - f. Login process is 6
  - g. User process (logon record) is 7
  - h. Dead process (usually logoff record) is 8
  - i. Accounting information is 9

5. Process ID
6. Process termination status (for dead process records)
7. Process exit status (for dead process records)
8. Entry time in seconds since 00:00:00 Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), January 1, 1970 (time\_t format)
9. Host name (for remote logons)
10. Entry time in display format

A sample output from the wtmp is shown in the following display:

```
# fwtmp < wtmp | head -35
root pts/1 openacct 9 0 0000 0000 961474201 Mon Jun 19 23:10:01 CDT 2000 ①
root pts/1 pts/1 7 18480 0000 0000 961442686 9.3.240.109 Mon Jun 19 14:24:46 CDT 2000
root pts/0 pts/0 6 17284 0000 0000 961514550 9.3.1.130 Tue Jun 20 10:22:30 CDT 2000
root pts/0 pts/0 7 17284 0000 0000 961514554 9.3.1.130 Tue Jun 20 10:22:34 CDT 2000
root pts/1 pts/1 8 18480 0000 0000 961514738 9.3.240.109 Tue Jun 20 10:25:38 CDT 2000
shutdown accting off 9 0 0000 0000 961514873 Tue Jun 20 10:27:53 CDT 2000 ②
LOGIN lft0 0 0 0000 0000 961514952 Tue Jun 20 10:29:12 CDT 2000
LOGIN dt lft0 6 5426 0000 0000 961515315 Tue Jun 20 10:35:15 CDT 2000
system boot 2 0 0000 0000 961515327 Tue Jun 20 10:35:27 CDT 2000 ③
run-level 2 1 0 0062 0123 961515327 Tue Jun 20 10:35:27 CDT 2000
rc rc 5 6220 0000 0000 961515327 Tue Jun 20 10:35:27 CDT 2000
rc AIX, acctg 9 0 0000 0000 961515331 Tue Jun 20 10:35:31 CDT 2000 ④
fbcheck rc 8 6220 0000 0000 961515331 Tue Jun 20 10:35:31 CDT 2000
fbcheck fbcheck 5 6222 0000 0000 961515331 Tue Jun 20 10:35:31 CDT 2000
sramstr fbcheck 8 6222 0000 0000 961515331 Tue Jun 20 10:35:31 CDT 2000
rctcpip sramstr 5 6224 0000 0000 961515331 Tue Jun 20 10:35:31 CDT 2000
rctcpip rctcpip 5 6458 0000 0000 961515331 Tue Jun 20 10:35:31 CDT 2000 ⑤
rodceclu rctcpip 8 6458 0000 0000 961515345 Tue Jun 20 10:35:45 CDT 2000
rodceclu rodceclup 5 6460 0000 0000 961515345 Tue Jun 20 10:35:45 CDT 2000
rodceclu rodceclup 8 6460 0000 0000 961515361 Tue Jun 20 10:36:01 CDT 2000
rodce rodce 5 6462 0000 0000 961515361 Tue Jun 20 10:36:01 CDT 2000
rodce rodce 8 6462 0000 0000 961515449 Tue Jun 20 10:37:29 CDT 2000
cron cron 5 8832 0000 0000 961515449 Tue Jun 20 10:37:29 CDT 2000
qdaemon qdaemon 5 8560 0000 0000 961515449 Tue Jun 20 10:37:29 CDT 2000
qdaemon qdaemon 8 8560 0000 0000 961515453 Tue Jun 20 10:37:33 CDT 2000
dt dt 5 8562 0000 0000 961515453 Tue Jun 20 10:37:33 CDT 2000
dt dt 8 8562 0000 0000 961515453 Tue Jun 20 10:37:33 CDT 2000
cons cons 5 8564 0000 0000 961515453 Tue Jun 20 10:37:33 CDT 2000
cons pts/0 pts/0 6 5988 0000 0000 961515457 9.3.1.130 Tue Jun 20 10:37:37 CDT 2000
root pts/1 pts/1 6 12222 0000 0000 961515471 ausres01 Tue Jun 20 10:37:51 CDT 2000
root pts/1 pts/1 7 12222 0000 0000 961515480 ausres01 Tue Jun 20 10:38:00 CDT 2000 ⑥
root pts/2 pts/2 7 5710 0000 0000 961515482 9.3.240.109 Tue Jun 20 10:38:02 CDT 2000
root pts/1 pts/1 8 12222 0001 0000 961515491 Tue Jun 20 10:38:11 CDT 2000 ⑦
root pts/0 pts/0 7 5988 0000 0000 961515515 9.3.1.130 Tue Jun 20 10:38:35 CDT 2000
root cons lft0 7 8564 0000 0000 961516113 Tue Jun 20 10:48:33 CDT 2000
```

To illustrate the contents of the wtmp file, we have numbered and commented some of its records:

1. An accounting marker record, indicating the time the daily accounting period has begun
2. An accounting record, indicating that process accounting has been turned off (because of the system shutdown indicated by the following record)
3. The boot records created by init
4. An accounting record, indicating that process accounting has been turned on (by the rc script)

5. Records indicating the start and end of the rctcpip script (spawned by init)
6. A logon record for user root at pts/1
7. The logoff record for the same session

### **The who command**

You can also use the `/usr/bin/who` command to partially display the contents of the `wtmp` file. The `who` command uses the `/etc/utmp` file by default, displaying information about the currently logged users, as described in the *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference Manual, Volume 6*, SBOF-1877. To use a different file, you should specify the file's name as a parameter to the command.

The `who` command has several flags that indicate the record types to be output. With the `-a` flag, you can obtain all possible records the command recognizes. Note, though, that unlike the `fwtmp` command, `who -a` does not show all records in `wtmp` nor all its fields. A sample output follows:

```
# who -a wtmp
root      -  lft0      Jun 20 10:47   old
root      +  pts/0     Jun 20 10:47   old
root      +  pts/1     Jun 12 18:45   .
root      +  pts/3     Jun 20 16:26   .
root      +  pts/5     Jun 21 14:05   2:05
LOGIN     +  pts/2     Jun 22 13:16   .
root      +  pts/2     Jun 22 13:16   .
root      +  pts/4     Jun 22 13:16   .
.         .   pts/4     Jun 22 13:16   .
.         .   pts/2     Jun 22 13:16   .
LOGIN     +  pts/2     Jun 22 13:17   .
rose     +  pts/2     Jun 22 13:17   .
```

The `who -a` command displays the following fields:

1. Login name for a new session, `LOGIN` for a login process, `init` process identification for a new process, or empty for a dead process or session
2. Whether the terminal is writable (+) or not (-)
3. Terminal device name or additional information
4. Entry time
5. Hours and minutes since last activity in the terminal (a dot indicates activity within the last minute, while `old` indicates that the terminal has been idle for more than 24 hours)

Note that the terminal state and terminal activity fields are not obtained from the `wtmp` file but from the special file associated with the terminal. This means that those fields do not make sense, except for currently opened

sessions. But the original purpose of the `who` command is to report current sessions.

### **The last command**

The `last` command displays, in reverse chronological order, session information in the `wtmp` file. You can restrict the output to sessions by a specific user and/or from a specific terminal. You can also specify the file to be read with the `-f` flag. A sample output follows:

```
# last
rose pts/2 lv9510a.itsc.aus Jun 22 13:17 - 13:44 (00:27)
root pts/4 9.3.240.109 Jun 22 13:16 - 13:16 (00:00)
root pts/2 ausres01 Jun 22 13:16 - 13:16 (00:00)
root pts/5 9.3.240.109 Jun 21 14:05 still logged in.
root pts/3 9.3.240.109 Jun 20 16:26 still logged in.
root pts/1 9.3.240.109 Jun 12 18:45 still logged in.
root pts/0 :0.0 Jun 20 10:47 still logged in.
root lft0 Jun 20 10:47 still logged in.

wtmp begins Jun 21 23:10
```

The `last` command reports:

- The user's login name
- The terminal
- The originating host
- The session's start time
- The session's end time (if applicable)
- The session's total time (if applicable)

Refer to the *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference, Volume 3, SBOF-1877*, for further information.

### **The ac command**

You can use the `ac` command to produce connection summary reports from the contents of `/var/adm/wtmp`. You can produce a report broken down by day (`-d` flag) or by user (`-p` flag). In the following display, we show a sample output of the `ac` command using both flags. The command shows the connection times in hours.

```
# ac -p -d
      root    204.80
Jun 20 total  204.80
      root    379.06
      gonzalo  0.15
      rose    0.10
Jun 26 total  379.31
```

### 3.3.2 The nite subdirectory

The usual contents of the `/var/adm/acct/nite` directory are:

```
# ls -l /var/adm/acct/nite
total 40
-rw-r--r--  1 adm    adm          0 Jun 18 23:10 accterr
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm       708 Jun 18 23:10 active
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm     5411 Jun 18 23:10 cms
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm          0 Jun 18 23:10 ctmp
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm     5108 Jun 18 23:10 daycms
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm     6120 Jun 18 23:10 daytacct
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm          5 Jun 18 23:10 lastdate
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm         87 Jun 18 23:10 lineuse
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm          0 Jun 18 23:10 log
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm       128 Jun 18 23:10 owtmp
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm       100 Jun 18 23:10 reboots
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm          9 Jun 18 23:10 statefile
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm          0 Jun 18 23:10 wtmperror
```

#### 3.3.2.1 Execution state of runacct

Four of the files in the nite subdirectory contain information about the execution of the runacct script. They are the accterr, active, lastdate, and statefile files. The accterr file contains the standard error output of the command and is usually empty.

The lastdate file contains the date the command last executed, while the statefile file contains the last state of runacct's last execution:

```
# cat lastdate
0618
# cat statefile
COMPLETE
```

Finally, the active file contains the execution trace of runacct:

```

# cat active
Sun Jun 18 23:10:01 CDT 2000
-rw-r--r--  1 adm    adm      6048 Jun 18 23:00 /var/adm/acct/nite/dacct
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm        64 Jun 17 23:10 /var/adm/wtmp
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm         0 Jun 17 23:10 fee
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm    34760 Jun 18 23:10 pacct
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm    adm         0 Jun 09 23:10 qacct
files setups complete
wtmp processing complete
connect acctg complete
process acctg complete for /var/adm/Spacct1.0618
all process actg complete for 0618
tacct merge to create daytacct complete
no fees
merged disk records
no queuing system records
updated sum/tacct
command summaries complete
system accounting completed at Sun Jun 18 23:10:05 CDT 2000

```

Note that the active file contains a listing of the input files with the raw usage data. It also contains summary line for each execution step.

### 3.3.2.2 Connection accounting

Six files in the nite subdirectory contain data generated for connection accounting. They are the ctmp, lineuse, log, owtmp, reboots, and wtmperror files. The log file is the standard error output of the `acctcon1` and `acctcon2` commands. The wtmperror file is the standard error output of the `wtmpfix` command. Both files are normally empty.

#### **The owtmp file**

The owtmp contains the original contents of the `/var/adm/wtmp` file run through the `wtmpfix` command, plus some marker records added by `runacct`. The owtmp file is the input file to the `acctcon1` command, which calculates the session times based on the logons and logoffs records in the input file.

A sample output of `fwtmp` is shown in the following display, with the logon and logoff records paired:

```
# fwtmp < owtmp
root pts/1 openacct 9 0 0000 0000 961387801 Sun Jun 18 23:10:01 CDT 2000
root pts/1 pts/1 7 18082 0000 0000 960853539 9.3.240.109 Mon Jun 12 18:45:39 CDT 2000
root pts/0 pts/0 6 18796 0000 0000 961444981 ausres01 Mon Jun 19 15:03:01 CDT 2000
root pts/0 pts/0 7 18796 0000 0000 961444982 ausres01 Mon Jun 19 15:03:02 CDT 2000
root pts/2 pts/2 7 20714 0000 0000 961444983 9.3.240.109 Mon Jun 19 15:03:03 CDT 2000
root pts/0 pts/0 8 18796 0001 0000 961444992 Mon Jun 19 15:03:12 CDT 2000
root pts/0 pts/0 6 11486 0000 0000 961450473 lv9510a.itsc.aus Mon Jun 19 16:34:33 CDT 2000
gonzalo pts/0 pts/0 7 11486 0000 0000 961450476 lv9510a.itsc.aus Mon Jun 19 16:34:36 CDT 2000
root pts/0 pts/0 8 11486 0000 0000 961457581 Mon Jun 19 18:33:01 CDT 2000
root pts/0 pts/0 6 11488 0000 0000 961457593 ausres01 Mon Jun 19 18:33:13 CDT 2000
rose pts/0 pts/0 7 11488 0000 0000 961457597 ausres01 Mon Jun 19 18:33:17 CDT 2000
root pts/0 pts/0 8 11488 0000 0000 961457598 Mon Jun 19 18:33:18 CDT 2000
root pts/1 runacct 9 0 0000 0000 961457613 Mon Jun 19 18:33:33 CDT 2000
root pts/1 pts/1 8 18082 0000 0000 960853539 9.3.240.109 Mon Jun 12 18:45:39 CDT 2000
root pts/2 pts/2 8 20714 0000 0000 961444983 9.3.240.109 Mon Jun 19 15:03:03 CDT 2000
```

Notice two interesting elements of the output. Note that one session (root at pts/1) was already opened at the start of the daily accounting period (indicated by the openacct record). Also note that two sessions (root at pts/1 and root at pts/2) were still opened by the end of the daily accounting period (indicated by the runacct record).

### The ctmp file

The ctmp file is the output of the `acctcon1` command, containing the session records for the day. Each session record is composed of:

1. The terminal's device id in `dev_t` format (for 32-bit machines the device's major number is in the 16 more significant bits, while the device's minor number is in the 16 less significant bits)
2. The user's uid
3. The login name
4. The session time (in seconds) during prime time hours
5. The session time (in seconds) during non-prime time hours
6. The time the session started in `time_t` format
7. The time the session started in text format

The ctmp file is sorted by uid and login name. The contents of the ctmp file can be displayed directly or through the `/usr/sbin/acct/prctmp` command, which adds a header and pipes the file through the `pr` command. The following display shows the ctmp file generated from the owtmp file previously shown:

```
# cat ctmp
1900544 0      root    10      0      961444982    Mon Jun 19 15:03:02 CDT 2000
1900545 0      root    28800   41012   961387801    Sun Jun 18 23:10:01 CDT 2000
1900546 0      root    7017    5613    961444983    Mon Jun 19 15:03:03 CDT 2000
1900544 201     gonzalo 1524    5581    961450476    Mon Jun 19 16:34:36 CDT 2000
1900544 202     rose    0        1      961457597    Mon Jun 19 18:33:17 CDT 2000
```

### ***The reboots file***

The reboots file contains a summary of the exception records found in the owtmp file. The file shows the starting and ending times of the daily accounting period. It also contains the number of occurrences for date change, boot, and accounting records.

```
# cat reboots
from Tue Jun 20 23:10:01 CDT 2000
to   Wed Jun 21 23:10:01 CDT 2000
1    openacct
1    runacct
1    acctconl
```

### ***The lineuse file***

The lineuse file contains a summary of terminal usage. The file initially shows the number of minutes in the daily accounting period. For each terminal used during that day, the file contains the name of the terminal, the total number of minutes the terminal was in use, the percentage of the total time the terminal was in use, the number of user sessions, the number of logons, and the number of logoffs.

An example of the lineuse file is shown in the following display:

```
# cat lineuse
TOTAL DURATION: 1440 MINUTES

LINE    MINUTES PERCENT # SESS  # ON   # OFF
lft0    1440    100     1      1     1
pts/0    1440    100     1      1     1
pts/1    1440    100     1      1     1
pts/2    392     27      1      1     1
pts/3    1440    100     1      1     1
pts/4     0       0       1      1     1
pts/5    544     38      1      1     1
TOTALS  6697    --      7      7     7
```

Note that the number of sessions, logons and logoffs in the example are the same, which is usually the case. To understand the meaning of the different values for those three statistics, you should know how they are generated:

- The number of sessions correspond to the number of user process records associated with the terminal, that is, the number of times a user logged on that terminal.
- The number of logons correspond to the number of times a user logged on an idle terminal.
- The number of logoffs correspond to the number of dead process records associated with the terminal.

Thus, if the number of sessions is larger than the number of logons, this indicates that a user initiated a new logon on that terminal without logging off first. In addition, a number of logoffs larger than the number of sessions suggests that the `getty` process associated with that terminal was killed before a user managed to log on. This usually happens when there are physical line problems.

### **3.3.2.3 The daily tacct file**

The `daytacct` file contains all accounting data for the day. This file is in the `tacct` format. The accounting system provides the `/usr/sbin/acct/acctmerge` command to manipulate the total accounting files. Please refer to the *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference, Volume 1*, SBOF-1877 for more information about the `acctmerge` command.

To obtain a report with the contents of `tacct` files, you should use the `/usr/sbin/acct/prtacct` command, which offers a friendly interface to the `acctmerge` command. A sample output of the `prtacct` command (split in two parts and with all blank lines removed for readability) is shown in the following display:

```

# prtacct -f 1-9 daytacct | grep -v ^$
Wed Jun 21 16:08:40 CDT 2000 Page 1
UID      LOGIN  CPU    CPU    KCORE  KCORE  BLKIO  BLKIO  RD/WR
        NAME  PRIME  NPRIME PRIME  NPRIME PRIME  NPRIME PRIME
0        TOTAL  2      5      1146   3236   74196  56712  68
0        root   2      5      1078   3204   56226  54018  68
2        bin    0      0      0      0      0      0      0
4        adm    0      0      8      27     816    2508   0
100     guest  0      0      0      0      0      0      0
201     gonzalo 0      0      60     3      17154  82     0
202     rose   0      0      0      1      0      104    0
203     vanel  0      0      0      0      0      0      0

# prtacct -f 10-18 daytacct | grep -v ^$
Wed Jun 21 16:09:46 CDT 2000 Page 1
RD/WR   CONNECT CONNECT DISK   PRINT   FEES    # OF    # OF    # DISK
NPRIME  PRIME   NPRIME BLOCKS          PROCS   SESS   SAMPLES
68      623    870    18468   1       100    2019   5      12
0       597    777    2       1       0      1288   3      2
0       0      0      2       0       0      0      0      2
68      0      0      0       0       0      691    0      0
0       0      0      2       0       0      0      0      2
0       25    93    15460   0       100    38     1      2
0       0      0      1554    0       0      2      1      2
0       0      0      1448    0       0      0      0      2

```

To split the output we used -f flag of the `prtacct` command. You may use this flag to specify the tacct fields to be displayed. The possible fields and their associated numbers are:

1. UID: The user's uid
2. LOGIN NAME: The user's login name
3. CPU PRIME: The accumulated CPU time for all the user's processes in minutes during prime time
4. CPU NPRIME: The accumulated CPU time for all the user's processes in minutes during non-prime time
5. KCORE PRIME: The accumulated memory used by all the user's processes in KB times minutes during prime time
6. KCORE NPRIME: The accumulated memory used by all the user's processes in KB times minutes during non-prime time
7. BLKIO PRIME: The total number of 1024 bytes blocks transferred during prime time
8. BLKIO NPRIME: The total number of 1024 bytes blocks transferred during non-prime time
9. RD/WR PRIME: The total number of disk blocks read or written during prime time
10. RD/WR NPRIME: The total number of disk blocks read or written during non-prime time
11. CONNECT PRIME: The total session times (in minutes) during prime time

- 12.CONNECT NPRIME: The total session times (in minutes) during non-prime time
- 13.DISK BLOCKS: The accumulated disk usage in 512 bytes disk blocks
- 14.PRINT: The total number of printed pages
- 15.FEES: The total extra service charges
- 16.# OF PROCS: The number of processes ran by the user
- 17.# OF SESS: The number of sessions initiated by the user
- 18.# DISK SAMPLES: The number of times disk usage information was collected for this user

To get a better feeling of what the KCORE fields express, note that the *average* memory usage of the user's processes can be calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\text{KCORE PRIME} + \text{KCORE NPRIME}}{\text{CPU PRIME} + \text{CPU NPRIME}}$$

For example, taking the values in the preceding sample file, the average size of root's processes is 612 KB.

Moreover, to work with disk-usage data, you should use the DISK BLOCKS and # DISK SAMPLES fields. To calculate the average number of disk blocks a user is allocating, you should use the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{DISK BLOCKS}}{\text{\# DISK SAMPLES}}$$

For further information on the `prtacct` command, please refer to the *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference, Volume 4, SBOF-1877*.

#### **3.3.2.4 The command summaries**

The `runacct` script creates two command summary reports in the `/var/adm/acct/nite` directory: The `daycms` and the `cms` files. These files are generated by the `acctcms` command.

The `daycms` file contains a report with the 50 largest programs that ran the previous day, while the `cms` file contains a report with the 50 largest programs running in the current fiscal accounting period (month). A sample of both files is shown in the following display:

```
# head -20 daycms
```

| TOTAL COMMAND SUMMARY |             |                |               |                |             |              |            |              |             |
|-----------------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
| COMMAND NAME          | NUMBER CMDS | TOTAL KCOREMIN | TOTAL CPU-MIN | TOTAL REAL-MIN | MEAN SIZE-K | MEAN CPU-MIN | HOG FACTOR | CHARS TRNSFD | BLOCKS READ |
| TOTALS                | 3215        | 12922.95       | 6.60          | 12374.73       | 1958.56     | 0.00         | 0.05       | 5.087e+09    | 573007.00   |
| cpu                   | 5           | 11850.60       | 3.01          | 7.17           | 3936.19     | 0.60         | 41.99      | 30757.00     | 0.00        |
| dcecp                 | 2           | 287.43         | 0.14          | 1.74           | 2106.34     | 0.07         | 7.86       | 1.743e+06    | 0.00        |
| smitty                | 16          | 262.72         | 0.11          | 8.30           | 2491.01     | 0.01         | 1.27       | 4.521e+06    | 0.00        |
| xlcentry              | 49          | 115.35         | 0.06          | 0.28           | 1822.84     | 0.00         | 22.92      | 7.162e+06    | 0.00        |
| aixterm               | 2           | 71.45          | 0.14          | 1520.67        | 494.33      | 0.07         | 0.01       | 4.62e+06     | 0.00        |
| lsvg                  | 21          | 49.58          | 0.03          | 0.16           | 1779.28     | 0.00         | 17.89      | 7.062e+07    | 0.00        |
| vi                    | 77          | 39.13          | 0.10          | 183.68         | 390.29      | 0.00         | 0.05       | 7.885e+06    | 0.00        |
| dtgreet               | 1           | 33.70          | 0.04          | 10.84          | 905.00      | 0.04         | 0.34       | 348608.00    | 0.00        |
| ksh                   | 248         | 32.64          | 0.16          | 1761.28        | 206.48      | 0.00         | 0.01       | 8.471e+06    | 0.00        |
| X                     | 1           | 28.19          | 0.04          | 13.19          | 717.00      | 0.04         | 0.30       | 177600.00    | 0.00        |
| ps                    | 54          | 19.19          | 0.05          | 0.06           | 379.94      | 0.00         | 91.51      | 610414.00    | 0.00        |
| lqueryvg              | 58          | 15.05          | 0.03          | 0.23           | 540.09      | 0.00         | 11.92      | 1.213e+08    | 0.00        |
| io                    | 25          | 11.66          | 1.24          | 2.66           | 9.37        | 0.05         | 46.85      | 4.492e+09    | 548416.00   |
| ls                    | 50          | 10.85          | 0.04          | 0.26           | 291.24      | 0.00         | 14.44      | 645061.00    | 0.00        |

```
# head -20 cms
```

| TOTAL COMMAND SUMMARY |             |                |               |                |             |              |            |              |             |
|-----------------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
| COMMAND NAME          | NUMBER CMDS | TOTAL KCOREMIN | TOTAL CPU-MIN | TOTAL REAL-MIN | MEAN SIZE-K | MEAN CPU-MIN | HOG FACTOR | CHARS TRNSFD | BLOCKS READ |
| TOTALS                | 4164        | 12957.39       | 6.79          | 12535.18       | 1909.45     | 0.00         | 0.05       | 5.172e+09    | 588607.00   |
| cpu                   | 5           | 11850.60       | 3.01          | 7.17           | 3936.19     | 0.60         | 41.99      | 30757.00     | 0.00        |
| dcecp                 | 2           | 287.43         | 0.14          | 1.74           | 2106.34     | 0.07         | 7.86       | 1.743e+06    | 0.00        |
| smitty                | 16          | 262.72         | 0.11          | 8.30           | 2491.01     | 0.01         | 1.27       | 4.521e+06    | 0.00        |
| xlcentry              | 49          | 115.35         | 0.06          | 0.28           | 1822.84     | 0.00         | 22.92      | 7.162e+06    | 0.00        |
| aixterm               | 2           | 71.45          | 0.14          | 1520.67        | 494.33      | 0.07         | 0.01       | 4.62e+06     | 0.00        |
| lsvg                  | 21          | 49.58          | 0.03          | 0.16           | 1779.28     | 0.00         | 17.89      | 7.062e+07    | 0.00        |
| vi                    | 80          | 42.28          | 0.11          | 211.10         | 395.01      | 0.00         | 0.05       | 8.077e+06    | 0.00        |
| ksh                   | 300         | 40.65          | 0.19          | 1761.56        | 212.95      | 0.00         | 0.01       | 1.339e+07    | 0.00        |
| dtgreet               | 1           | 33.70          | 0.04          | 10.84          | 905.00      | 0.04         | 0.34       | 348608.00    | 0.00        |
| X                     | 1           | 28.19          | 0.04          | 13.19          | 717.00      | 0.04         | 0.30       | 177600.00    | 0.00        |
| ps                    | 55          | 19.31          | 0.05          | 0.06           | 378.22      | 0.00         | 91.59      | 632142.00    | 0.00        |
| lqueryvg              | 58          | 15.05          | 0.03          | 0.23           | 540.09      | 0.00         | 11.92      | 1.213e+08    | 0.00        |
| bsh                   | 346         | 11.77          | 0.06          | 2.46           | 189.96      | 0.00         | 2.52       | 4.912e+06    | 0.00        |
| io                    | 25          | 11.66          | 1.24          | 2.66           | 9.37        | 0.05         | 46.85      | 4.492e+09    | 548416.00   |

Note that the file cms must have greater values in the TOTALS line than those values in the corresponding line in the daycms file. The cms file is a report of the accumulated command summaries, including the daily command summaries detailed in the daycms file. But in the specific example shown, the accumulated usage is only slightly greater than the day's usage. This is so because we have been running accounting for just a few days, and the day accounted in the daycms file was a particularly busy day.

### 3.3.3 The sum subdirectory

The typical contents of the /var/adm/acct/sum directory are shown in the following display:

```
# ls -l /var/adm/acct/sum
total 207
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm      6660 Jun 21 23:10 cms
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm      6120 Jun 21 23:10 cmsprev
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm      4020 Jun 21 23:10 daycms
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        202 Jun 21 23:10 loginlog
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm      7971 Jun 15 23:10 rpprt0615
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm     11512 Jun 16 23:10 rpprt0616
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm     11512 Jun 17 23:10 rpprt0617
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm     11512 Jun 18 23:10 rpprt0618
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm     12950 Jun 19 18:33 rpprt0619
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm     12984 Jun 20 23:10 rpprt0620
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm     13024 Jun 21 23:10 rpprt0621
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        504 Jun 21 23:10 tacct
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        144 Jun 15 23:10 tacct0615
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        144 Jun 16 23:10 tacct0616
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        144 Jun 17 23:10 tacct0617
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        144 Jun 18 23:10 tacct0618
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        504 Jun 19 18:33 tacct0619
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        504 Jun 20 23:10 tacct0620
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        504 Jun 21 23:10 tacct0621
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm        504 Jun 21 23:10 tacctprev
```

#### 3.3.3.1 The tacct files

The sum subdirectory stores the total accounting files for the current month. The *tacctdate* files contain the total accounting records for the corresponding day. The tacct file contains the accumulated total accounting records for the current month, that is, the aggregate of all the *tacctdate* files. And finally, the tacctprev file is a copy of the previous contents of the tacct file.

As discussed in Section Section 3.3.2.3, “The daily tacct file” on page 95, you can use the *prtacct* and the *acctmerg* commands to display the tacct files.

#### 3.3.3.2 The command summaries

The sum subdirectory stores the month’s command summary file, *cms*. The last daily command summary is kept in the *daycms* file. The *cmsprev* file is a copy of the previous *cms* file.

To obtain a report from a *cms* file, you should use the *acctcms* command with the *-a -s* flags. A sample output of the command is shown in the following display:

```
# acctcms -a -s cms | head -20
```

| TOTAL COMMAND SUMMARY |             |                |               |                |             |              |            |              |             |
|-----------------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
| COMMAND NAME          | NUMBER CMDS | TOTAL KCOREMIN | TOTAL CPU-MIN | TOTAL REAL-MIN | MEAN SIZE-K | MEAN CPU-MIN | HOG FACTOR | CHARS TRNSFD | BLOCKS READ |
| TOTALS                | 4164        | 12957.39       | 6.79          | 12535.18       | 1909.45     | 0.00         | 0.05       | 5.172e+09    | 588607.00   |
| cpu                   | 5           | 11850.60       | 3.01          | 7.17           | 3936.19     | 0.60         | 41.99      | 30757.00     | 0.00        |
| dcecp                 | 2           | 287.43         | 0.14          | 1.74           | 2106.34     | 0.07         | 7.86       | 1.743e+06    | 0.00        |
| smitty                | 16          | 262.72         | 0.11          | 8.30           | 2491.01     | 0.01         | 1.27       | 4.521e+06    | 0.00        |
| xlcentry              | 49          | 115.35         | 0.06          | 0.28           | 1822.84     | 0.00         | 22.92      | 7.162e+06    | 0.00        |
| aixterm               | 2           | 71.45          | 0.14          | 1520.67        | 494.33      | 0.07         | 0.01       | 4.62e+06     | 0.00        |
| lsvg                  | 21          | 49.58          | 0.03          | 0.16           | 1779.28     | 0.00         | 17.89      | 7.062e+07    | 0.00        |
| vi                    | 80          | 42.28          | 0.11          | 211.10         | 395.01      | 0.00         | 0.05       | 8.077e+06    | 0.00        |
| ksh                   | 300         | 40.65          | 0.19          | 1761.56        | 212.95      | 0.00         | 0.01       | 1.339e+07    | 0.00        |
| dtgreet               | 1           | 33.70          | 0.04          | 10.84          | 905.00      | 0.04         | 0.34       | 348608.00    | 0.00        |
| X                     | 1           | 28.19          | 0.04          | 13.19          | 717.00      | 0.04         | 0.30       | 177600.00    | 0.00        |
| ps                    | 55          | 19.31          | 0.05          | 0.06           | 378.22      | 0.00         | 91.59      | 632142.00    | 0.00        |
| lqueryvg              | 58          | 15.05          | 0.03          | 0.23           | 540.09      | 0.00         | 11.92      | 1.213e+08    | 0.00        |
| bsh                   | 346         | 11.77          | 0.06          | 2.46           | 189.96      | 0.00         | 2.52       | 4.912e+06    | 0.00        |
| io                    | 25          | 11.66          | 1.24          | 2.66           | 9.37        | 0.05         | 46.85      | 4.492e+09    | 548416.00   |

Note the output of the `acctcms` command for the `/var/adm/acct/sum/cms` file is equal to the contents of the `/var/adm/acct/nite/cms` file (for the first 56 lines, that is).

### 3.3.3.3 The loginlog file

The `loginlog` file contains the date of last login (00-00-00, if the user never logged in) and the user's login name for all the users in the system. It is sorted by login date. The contents of the file are as follow:

```
# cat loginlog
00-00-00 adm
00-00-00 bin
00-00-00 daemon
00-00-00 guest
00-00-00 innadm
00-00-00 lpd
00-00-00 nobody
00-00-00 sys
00-00-00 uucp
00-00-00 vanel
00-06-19 rose
00-06-20 gonzalo
00-06-21 root
```

### 3.3.3.4 The report files

The `rprtdate` files contain a report for every corresponding date. These reports are generated by the `prdaily` command. Each report contains:

- The contents of the nite/reboots file
- The contents of the nite/lineuse file
- The contents of the nite/daytacct file as generated by the `prtacct` command
- The contents of the nite/daycms file
- The contents of the nite/cms file
- The contents of the sum/loginlog file

### 3.3.4 The fiscal subdirectory

The `/var/adm/acct/fiscal` directory contains the command summary file (`cmsmm`), the total accounting file (`tacctmm`), and a usage report for every month already passed (`fiscrptmm`), as exemplified in the following display:

```
# ls -l /var/adm/acct/fiscal
total 2391
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm      15660 Jun 18 23:10 cms06
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm      11820 Jun 21 23:10 cms07
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm     729541 Jun 19 16:25 fiscrpt06
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm      38080 Jun 22 21:40 fiscrpt07
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm     409968 Jun 18 23:10 tacct06
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm    adm       8136 Jun 21 23:10 tacct07
```

These files are identified by the month (the `monacct` command created them). Since `monacct` usually runs the first of each month, the identifications are one number off. This means, for example, that the file `cms06` would contain the command summaries for the month of May.

A fiscal report file contains the total accounting report, the command summary report, and the contents of the loginlog file for the corresponding month.

---

## 3.4 Troubleshooting

Most of the problems you will encounter with accounting originate from an incorrect setup. The first few days after you have started collecting accounting data, you should carefully check all accounting files. You should also read Section 3.1, “Inside accounting” on page 49, paying particular attention to all the steps that generate the accounting files; this should help you solve any problems you encounter.

### 3.4.1 Detecting errors

The main accounting command, `runacct`, will send you an e-mail for most error situations it encounters (if you have set the `MAILCOM` variable as

explained in Section Section 3.2.2, “Setting up the environment” on page 66). An example of the message sent by the command is shown in the following display:

```
# mail
Mail [5.2 UCB] [AIX 4.1] Type ? for help.
"/var/spool/mail/root": 1 message 1 new
>N 1 adm          Mon Jun 19 23:10 12/366
? 1
Message 1:
From adm Mon Jun 19 23:10:05 2000
Date: Mon, 19 Jun 2000 23:10:05 -0500
From: adm
To: root

***** ACCT ERRORS : see /var/adm/acct/nite/active0619*****

?
```

Most of the time, an absence of e-mail messages indicates that accounting is running error-free. But, there is one error situation where `runacct` fails to send out an e-mail message: when the `acctmerg` fails to merge the connection and process accounting files. Also, there are some error conditions that are not checked by `runacct`. For example: if there are permission problems with the `qacct` file. In conclusion, you should not rely completely on the mail facility of `runacct`.

You should periodically check the contents of the following files in the `/var/adm/acct/nite` directory:

- The `active` file, which contains the execution trace of `runacct`
- The `accterr` file, which is the standard error file for `runacct` and most of the commands it calls
- The `log` file, which is the standard error file for the `acctcon1` and `acctcon2` commands
- The `wtmperror` file, which is the standard error file for the `wtmpfix` command (which is renamed to `wtmperrordate` if the `wtmpfix` command returns with an error)

Note that the last three files are usually empty. The simple fact that one of those files is not empty should indicate that something is wrong with the accounting process.

On the other hand, if `runacct` detects an error, it will rename the `active` file (in most cases, at least) to `activedate`, where `date` is the current date in `mmdd` format. By renaming the `active` file, the command tries to guarantee that the

error information in the file is not lost, in case the command is run again (the following day) without the error being fixed.

After detecting the error, you should fix the problem and then restart the `runacct` command.

### 3.4.2 Fixing file permissions

A possible cause for execution errors is incorrect file permissions. You should remember that the accounting procedures run under the `adm` user (while you are usually using the root account). You have to be careful to ensure that all accounting files allow full access to the `adm` user.

To create a new accounting file, such as `/var/adm/qacct`, you should use the `nulladm` command, which creates the file with the correct ownership and permissions. This is shown in the following display:

```
# nulladm qacct
# ls -l qacct
-rw-rw-r-- 1 adm      adm          0 Jun 26 17:53 qacct
```

If you have an existing file with incorrect ownership or permissions, you should not run the `nulladm` command, since it always creates a new file. Instead you should manually adjust the file attributes using the following commands:

```
chown adm.adm qacct
(umask 002; chmod 0664 qacct)
```

### 3.4.3 Fixing the wtmp files

The accounting process terminates in error if the `wtmpfix` command detects a corrupt `wtmp` file. You can try to fix such problems with the help of the `fwtmp` command.

The input to the `wtmpfix` command is the `/var/adm/acct/nite/wtmp.date` file, where `date` is the date `runacct` ran in `mmdd` format. The first recovery step is to transform the `wtmp` file into ASCII format:

```
fwtmp < /var/adm/acct/nite/wtmp.date > /tmp/wtmp
```

Then you should edit the `/tmp/wtmp` file, reviewing its contents and deleting any strange records. After the file is fixed, you should once more use the `fwtmp` command to transform it back to binary `wtmp` format:

```
fwtmp -ic < /tmp/wtmp > /var/adm/acct/nite/wtmp.date
```

### 3.4.4 Fixing the tacct files

The accounting system also provides you with a method to fix tacct files. Let us assume that you found a strange looking record on the last daily usage report (file `/var/adm/acct/sum/rprtdate`). The previous day report is fine, so you take a look at the last daily total accounting file (using the `prtacct` command on the `/var/adm/acct/sum/tacctdate` file) and find out that you have a problem there. For example: a negative CPU usage for one of your users.

Since the problem occurred on the current daily tacct file, you can solve it by first fixing the `tacctdate` file and then merging that file with the `tacctprev` file, generating a new and correct version of the tacct file. To do so, you should take the following steps:

1. Change your current directory:

```
cd /var/adm/acct/sum
```

2. Transform the `tacctdate` file into ASCII format:

```
acctmerg -v < tacctdate > /tmp/dtacct
```

3. Edit the `/tmp/dtacct` file and fix the suspicious record.

4. Create a new daily tacct file:

```
acctmerg -i < /tmp/dtacct > tacctdate
```

5. Generate the new tacct file:

```
acctmerg tacctprev < tacctdate > tacct
```

### 3.4.5 Restarting runacct

After fixing the problem that caused `runacct` to fail, you should restart it.

#### 3.4.5.1 The lock files

Before restarting `runacct`, you should to remove the lock files that the command uses to guarantee its serial execution. The command generates two lock files in the `/var/adm/acct/nite` directory, `lock` and `lock1`. Usually these files are removed when `runacct` exits, even on error conditions. But since there are a few situations where the files are not removed, you should always check for those files and remove them. To remove the files you can use the `/usr/sbin/acct/remove` command, which removes the lock files (as well as some files in the `/var/adm/acct/sum` directory that are not created nor used by the AIX accounting system).

#### 3.4.5.2 The restart parameters

To restart the `runacct` command, you have to pass the command one or two parameters. The first parameter is the date (in `mddd` format) you are

reprocessing. The second parameter is in which state you want the re-execution to begin.

Arguably, the most common scenario is when you only need to pass a single parameter to `runacct`, like in the following command:

```
runacct 0629
```

With such a command, you are requesting for the processing of June 29th to be redone. The command will start processing the appropriate files at the state specified in the `/var/adm/acct/nite/statefile` file. This file contains the value of the last state `runacct` attempted to execute.

There are two situations where the content of the statefile file is not the correct state to start re-execution. The first one is when, in order to fix the problem, you need to backtrack some states. For example: `runacct` failed in the `CONNECT1` state because of a corrupt `wtmp` file. To solve the problem you need to fix the `wtmp.date` file and run the `wtmpfix` program again. After correcting `wtmp.date`, you could use the following command:

```
runacct 0629 WTMPFIX
```

With that command, the statefile file will be ignored and re-execution will start at the state specified.

Another situation where you need to specify two parameters is when some days have passed since the problem first occurred. In such case, cron must have started the command for normal processing one or more times. If normal processing has managed to finish without encountering any errors, the statefile will contain the string `COMPLETE`. If normal processing terminated with errors, chances are that the last state executed by `runacct` was not the same state where the original error happened. In any case, you will probably need to specify the state to restart `runacct`.

### 3.4.5.3 Sequence of reexecutions

If the execution of `runacct` has been failing for several days, the accounting system generally allows you to rerun the `runacct` command for each incomplete day, correctly generating the daily data (except for queue and disk accounting information). This feature is possible because the `SETUP` state freezes the connection and process accounting files, changing their name to `wtmp.date` or `Spaccti.date`, respectively.

But if you are facing an unlikely problem in or before the `SETUP` state (usually caused because the previous execution of `runacct` did not remove the lock files), you will not be able to generate the daily data. Note that you will not

necessarily lose any accounting information; the wtmp and pacct files will have that information stored. But since the accounting system will not be able to correctly divide that information by day of usage, all those days' of accounting data will be accounted to a single calendar day.

#### 3.4.5.4 The lastdate file

When you are restarting the `runacct` command, it ignores the contents of the `/var/adm/acct/nite/lastdate` file. This file contains the date of the last normal execution of the command. You should only worry about this file when, for any reason, you run `runacct` without parameters. This will cause the lastdate file to contain the current date, which in turn will cause the next daily execution of `runacct` to fail, if it happens to be in the same day. (We think that this behavior is correct, that is, we do not see any obvious reason to have the normal execution of `runacct` twice in a day.)

---

### 3.5 Sizing considerations

AIX accounting, mainly process accounting, is considered by some systems administrators to impact system performance. That may have been true when UNIX ran on considerably less powerful machines than current RS/6000s. We have run several performance tests, saturating our test machine, and we could not find any significant impact caused by accounting.

On one test, we simultaneously spawned hundreds of very small processes on an F50. The idea was to see if there was a significant delay due to the serialized writing of the process accounting records to the `/var/adm/pacct` file. We measured the time needed for all processes to finish, with and without accounting. We ran the test several times and observed no significant differences.

The daily accounting processing should not impact your system either. Even if you have a busy system with thousands of users, you can always adjust cron to run the accounting job at the most convenient time (like early in the morning, instead of before midnight).

Disk space could be a problem if you have a very small system with serious disk constraints. But apart from such extreme conditions, we consider that accounting does not demand excessive disk space:

- The accounting directory has limited growth (remember that most files are removed daily, some daily files are removed monthly, and the monthly files are removed yearly).

- Most of the files have a size which is a function of the number of users on your system. But even if you have thousands of users, you would not be needing more than some tens of MB to keep those files.
- On a busy system, the pacct files could be a reason for concern. But each process generates only a 40 byte record, which means that you would have to be processing hundreds of thousands processes per day to fill up the standard /var file system with pacct files.



---

## Chapter 4. Accounting on the SP

If you wanted to have accounting running on your SP system, you could follow the procedures described in Chapter 3, “Accounting on AIX” on page 49, in each and every node on your system. But, even for medium-sized systems, such a procedure would demand too much work. Fortunately, you have two non-mutually exclusive options to quickly implement accounting on your SP, either through PSSP or through LoadLeveler.

---

### 4.1 Accounting with PSSP

PSSP provides an automatic procedure to configure and run accounting in all SP nodes. You will realize that it takes less steps to configure and run accounting with PSSP than with standard AIX.

As we will see in the following sections, PSSP accounting does not equal AIX accounting replicated over tens or hundreds of nodes. Accounting on the SP has several distinct characteristics:

- PSSP accounting consolidates the accounting data from all the SP nodes into a single node: the accounting master node (usually the control workstation).
- With PSSP accounting, you can divide your nodes into accounting classes. The accounting master will collect and merge the data for each accounting class individually.
- PSSP allows you charge your users for the exclusive use of a node. A user can ask for exclusive use of a node by indicating in his LoadLeveler job that the node usage is `not_shared`. PSSP considers the time the node was allocated as extra service charges. PSSP also does not take into account the system resources used by such job steps; otherwise, it would constitute double charging.
- PSSP offers its own versions of the daily and monthly accounting commands, which use a slightly different file and directory structure.

In the following sections, we will describe how to install PSSP accounting and how to analyze the accounting data. Please refer to the *PSSP Version 3.1.1 Administration Guide*, SA22-7348, for further information.

## 4.1.1 Setting up PSSP accounting

To contrast the installation steps of the AIX and the PSSP implementations, we will use, in this section, the same order of the installation steps as in Section 3.2, “Setting up accounting” on page 64.

To install PSSP accounting, you should log on as root at the control workstation.

### 4.1.1.1 Installing the filesets with PSSP

You should install the `bos.acct` and the `ssp.sysman` filesets, both on the control workstation and on all the nodes. Do not forget to copy those filesets to the appropriate `lppsource` and `pssplpp` directories, so future node installations or re-installations will automatically install those filesets.

After installing the filesets, you should specify how accounting will be done on your SP system.

#### ***Enabling accounting***

You should use the `spsitenv` command (or `smit enter_data`) to enable accounting on the SP system. The relevant site environment variables (with their default values) are highlighted in the following display:

```

# splstdata -e
      List Site Environment Database Information

attribute          value
-----
control_workstation  cws1
cw_ipaddrs          10.3.187.243:9.3.187.245:9.3.187.243:
install_image       bos.obj.ssp.433
remove_image        false
primary_node        1
ntp_config          consensus
ntp_server          ""
ntp_version         3
amd_config          true
print_config        false
print_id            ""
usermgmt_config     true
passwd_file         /etc/passwd
passwd_file_loc     cws1
homedir_server      cws1
homedir_path        /home/cws1
filecoll_config     true
supman_uid          102
supfilesrv_port     8431
spacct_enable       false
spacct_actnode_thresh  80
spacct_exclude_enable  false
acct_master         0
cw_has_usr_clients  false
code_version        PSSP-3.1.1
layout_dir          ""
authent_server      ssp
backup_cw           ""
ipaddrs_bucw       ""
active_cw           ""
sec_master          ""
ods_server          ""
cell_name           ""
cw_lppsource_name   aix433
cw_dcehostname      ""

```

The function of the accounting site environment attributes are:

- SP Accounting Enabled (spacct\_enable) enables (true value) or disables (false value) overall accounting. When you enable overall accounting, accounting will not necessarily take place on all nodes, as explained in the following subsection.
- SP Accounting Active Node Threshold (spacct\_actnode\_thresh) indicates the minimum percentage of nodes with valid accounting data that is necessary for the daily consolidation to take place. The default value, 80, indicates that if less than 80% of the nodes have collected their daily accounting data, then the accounting consolidation on the accounting master will not take place.

- SP Exclusive Use Accounting Enabled (spacct\_exclude\_enable) specifies an overall decision on whether to charge (true value) or not (false value) an user for the exclusive use of a node. You can control on a node by node basis whether the exclusive use of the individual node will be charged or not, as explained in the following subsection.
- Accounting Master (acct\_master) contains the node number of the node that will gather all accounting data.

To start accounting, you should at least modify the spacct\_enable attribute, as shown in the following display:

```
# spsitenv spacct_enable=true spacct_exclude_enable=true
rc.ntp: Starting ntp daemon(xntpd)
0513-029 The supfilesrv Subsystem is already active.
Multiple instances are not supported.
/etc/auto/startauto: The automount daemon is already running on this system.
f01n01: rc.ntp: Starting ntp daemon(xntpd)
f01n01: Updating collection sup.admin from server cwst1.
f01n01: File Changes: 1 updated, 0 removed, 0 errors.
f01n01: Updating collection user.admin from server cwst1.
f01n01: File Changes: 6 updated, 0 removed, 0 errors.
f01n01: Updating collection node.root from server cwst1.
f01n01: File Changes: 0 updated, 0 removed, 0 errors.
f01n01: /etc/auto/startauto: The automount daemon is already running on this system.
f01n01: /var/adm/acct
root=CWS1:cwst1:f02n01t.itsc.austin.ibm.com:cwst1t.itsc.austin.ibm.com,access=CWS1:cw
st1:f02n01t.itsc.austin.ibm.com:cwst1t.itsc.austin.ibm.com
f01n01: Exported /var/adm/acct
...
```

Note from the output that the SP services are reconfigured both in the control workstation and in the nodes. The main actions taken to configure accounting follow:

On the accounting master:

- The accounting directories are created.
- The appropriate crontab entries are created.

On the control workstation:

- The /etc/acct/holidays file is added to the user.admin file collection.

On the nodes:

- The accounting directories are created.
- The wtmp and pacct files are created if necessary.
- The appropriate crontab entries are created.

- Process accounting is started and the appropriate command is added to `/etc/rc`.
- The `/var/adm/acct` directory is exported (so that the node's usage data can be collected from the accounting master).

As you can see, many of the actions you would need to manually execute on standard AIX are automatically done by PSSP.

Now accounting is configured and running on your SP system. But you may want to do some further customizing, as explained in subsequent subsections.

### **Customizing the nodes**

After accounting is enabled on your system, you may want to disable it on some nodes or do some further node customizing. The SDR maintains the following accounting information for each node:

```
# splstdata -A
      List Node Accounting Information
```

| node# | hostname | acct_class_id | acct_enable | acct_exclude_enable | acct_job_charge |
|-------|----------|---------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1     | f01n01   | default       | default     | false               | 1.0000          |
| 3     | f01n03   | default       | default     | false               | 1.0000          |
| 5     | f01n05   | default       | default     | false               | 1.0000          |
| 6     | f01n06   | default       | default     | false               | 1.0000          |
| 7     | f01n07   | default       | default     | false               | 1.0000          |

- The Accounting Class Identifier (`acct_class_id`) attribute indicates the class to which the node belongs. A class is identified by a string. You do not need any additional steps to create a class. You just need to specify, for all nodes that will belong to that class, the same string value as the node's class identifier. By default, there is a single accounting class named *default*.
- The Accounting Enable (`acct_enable`) attribute is used to individually enable or disable accounting. If the attribute has the value true, accounting is enabled on that node, independently of the `spacct_enable` attribute's value. If `acct_enable` is false, accounting is unconditionally disabled on that node. If `acct_enable` equals default, accounting on that node is enabled or disabled, depending on whether `spacct_enable` is true or false. As you can see, since the initial value for `acct_enable` is default, it is enough to set `spacct_enable` to true to enable accounting on all nodes.

- The Exclusive Use Accounting Enabled (`acct_exclude_enable`) attribute indicates whether exclusive use of that node will be charged to the user or not. The possible values are `true` and `false`, with `false` being the initial one.
- The Accounting Job Charge Value (`acct_job_charge`) attribute specifies the number of seconds of exclusive use per charge fee unit. The initial value is 1.0. For example, a value of 60.0 would mean that for every *minute* a non-shared LoadLeveler job step stays in the system, one fee unit would be charged to the user.

**Note**

To enable exclusive use accounting, you need to do *all* the following:

- Set the `spacct_exclude_enable` attribute to `true`.
- Set the `acct_exclude_enable` attribute to `true` for the nodes in your system.
- Set the keyword `spacct_exclude_enable` to `true` in the machine stanzas of your LoadLeveler administration file.

To change an accounting attribute, you should use the `spacctnd` command (or `smit node_data`). For example, to disable accounting on node 1 you could use the following command:

```
# spacctnd -e false -l 1
f01n01: rc.ntp: Starting ntp daemon(xntpd)
f01n01: Updating collection sup.admin from server cwst1.
f01n01: File Changes: 0 updated, 0 removed, 0 errors.
f01n01: Updating collection user.admin from server cwst1.
f01n01: File Changes: 6 updated, 0 removed, 0 errors.
f01n01: Updating collection node.root from server cwst1.
f01n01: File Changes: 0 updated, 0 removed, 0 errors.
f01n01: /etc/auto/startauto: The automount daemon is already running on this system.
cws1: rc.ntp: Starting ntp daemon(xntpd)
cws1: 0513-029 The supfilesrv Subsystem is already active.
cws1: Multiple instances are not supported.
cws1: /etc/auto/startauto: The automount daemon is already running on this system.
```

Note that the SP services are reconfigured in the affected node and in the control workstation (the accounting master).

#### 4.1.1.2 Setting up the environment with PSSP

We recommend you set the value of the `MAILCOM` variable, both in the control workstation and in all the nodes, as described in Section 3.2.2, “Setting up the environment” on page 66. Depending on your needs, you

could modify the `/etc/environment` only on the control workstation and then add that file to the `user.admin` file collection.

#### 4.1.1.3 Updating the crontab entries with PSSP

With PSSP, you do not need to manually enter the accounting crontab entries on the control workstation and on the nodes. For example, the accounting crontab entries on one of the nodes (`f01n05`) and on the control workstation, right after the execution of the `spsitenv` command, are shown in the following display:

```
# rsh f01n05 crontab -l | tail -3
0 1 * * 4 /usr/sbin/acct/dodisk
5 * * * * /usr/sbin/acct/ckpacct
0 2 * * 1-6 /usr/lpp/ssp/bin/nrunacct 2>/var/adm/acct/nite/accter
# crontab -l | tail -2
0 4 * * 1-6 /usr/lpp/ssp/bin/crunacct 2>/var/adm/cacct/nite/accterr
15 5 1 * * /usr/lpp/ssp/bin/cmonacct
```

Comparing these entries with those for standard AIX, you should note that:

- A node does not run the `runacct` command daily, but instead runs its PSSP counterpart, `nrunacct`. The `nrunacct` command only generates the daily usage data files (`lineuse`, `reboots`, `dayacct`, `daycms`, and `loginlog`), but no aggregate files or reports.
- In the same manner, the `monacct` command does not run on the nodes.
- The accounting master runs its own version of `runacct` and `monacct`. The `crunacct` command gathers the data generated by `nrunacct` on all the nodes (using NFS). With that information, it generates reports and aggregate files per class. The `cmonacct` command generates monthly accounting files and monthly reports for each accounting class.
- Neither the `dodisk` command or the `ckpacct` commands are set to run on the control workstation. PSSP accounting does *not* gather usage data on the control workstation (no users should be using it anyway). If you need to gather accounting data for the control workstation, you may set up standard AIX accounting on it.
- PSSP accounting runs under the root user, not the adm user.
- The accounting jobs are set up to run during the morning hours of each day, not before midnight, as in standard AIX (which means that the accounting files contain data from the previous day).

To modify the accounting crontab entries on the nodes, you have two options.

The first option is to have a single copy of the crontab file and propagate it to all the nodes through supper (probably using the node.root collection, since the crontab file on the control workstation and those on the nodes are not the same). This may work fine if all your nodes can execute the same cron jobs (that is, if the accounting master is the control workstation *and* all nodes have accounting enabled). For this option to work, you would also need to remove the /usr/lpp/ssp/config/cron\_template file from all nodes.

Your second option is to modify the /usr/lpp/ssp/config/cron\_template file. This file is used by accounting service configuration to create the crontab entries. The default contents of that file follow:

```
# cat /usr/lpp/ssp/config/cron_template
# This is the crontab template file. It is read by acct_config
# to update the root crontab file with accounting-related entries.

DODISK      0 1 * * 4
CHKPACCT    5 * * * *
NRUNACCT    0 2 * * 1-6
CRUNACCT    0 4 * * 1-6
CMONACCT    15 5 1 * *
```

Note that the file does not contain full crontab entries, just a initial keyword specifying the command to be executed, followed by the specification of how the command should run. When editing this file, you should not modify the keywords.

You would need to modify this file on all nodes, as well as on the control workstation. Therefore, the best solution would be to edit it on the control workstation and add it to a supper file collection. A file collection like user.admin would work, since this file can be the same everywhere. It is the accounting service configuration process that decides which jobs to add and which not.

After you have modified the file and propagated the changes to all the nodes, you need to run the following command on the nodes and on the control workstation for those changes to take effect immediately:

```
/usr/lpp/ssp/install/bin/services_config
```

This command runs automatically when a node boots. This is why it was recommended that you remove the cron\_template file if you decide to use file collections to propagate the root's crontab file.

#### 4.1.1.4 Setting up disk accounting with PSSP

To set up disk accounting, you need to set the attribute `account` to true on all file systems that are going to be accounted, as explained in Section 3.2.7.1, “Setting up fast mode disk accounting” on page 71. Since you will have to do it node by node you could use something like the following command:

```
rsh f01n01 chfs -t yes /home
```

Note that PSSP does not expect you to use slow mode disk accounting, only fast mode. If you really need to run slow mode disk accounting, you should investigate the possibility of doing so from the control workstation.

#### 4.1.1.5 Setting up queue accounting with PSSP

To set up queue accounting, you need to specify the name of the printer accounting file (`/var/adm/qacct`), as discussed in Section 3.2.8, “Setting up queue accounting” on page 72. You may use the `chque` command to do so, as in the following example:

```
rsh f01n01 chque -qlp0 -a'acctfile = /var/adm/qacct'
```

#### 4.1.1.6 Defining the billing periods with PSSP

You should edit the `/etc/acct/holidays` on the control workstation to correctly specify your company’s definition of prime and non-prime hours. Please refer to Section 3.2.9, “Defining the billing periods” on page 76, for a detailed explanation of that file’s contents.

Since `/etc/acct/holidays` is automatically put in the `user.admin` file collection, any modifications done on the control workstation will be automatically propagated to all nodes in the system.

### 4.1.2 The output files

In this section, we will discuss the most important permanent files generated by PSSP accounting. For a detailed description of accounting files, see Section 3.3, “Reading the accounting files” on page 78.

#### 4.1.2.1 The files on the nodes

A list of the accounting files usually present on the SP nodes appears on the following display:

```

# rsh f010n01 cd /var/adm \; ls -lR acct dtmp fee pacct wtmp
-rw-r--r--  1 root    system      0 Jun 22 00:00 dtmp
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm         0 Jun 28 01:01 fee
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm       149240 Jun 28 22:11 pacct
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm         64 Jun 28 01:00 wtmp

acct:
total 196
drwxr-xr-x  2 adm     adm         512 Jun 28 21:54 fiscal
drwxr-xr-x  2 adm     adm       70144 Jun 28 21:52 nite
drwxr-xr-x  2 adm     adm       26112 Jun 28 21:55 sum

acct/fiscal:
total 0

acct/nite:
total 6
-rw-r--r--  1 adm     adm        144 Jun 28 01:00 accterr
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm       754 Jun 28 01:01 active
-rw-r--r--  1 adm     adm         0 Jun 22 00:00 dacct
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm         5 Jan 03 18:04 jobcharge
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm         0 Jun 28 01:00 jobrecs
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm         9 Jun 28 01:00 lastdate
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm         0 Jun 28 01:00 log
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm       128 Jun 28 01:00 owtmp
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm     adm         0 Jun 28 01:00 wtmperror

acct/sum:
total 10
-rw-rw-r--  1 root    system     4919 Jun 28 01:01 loginlog

```

Most of the files are those found in standard AIX accounting, except for the following:

- The `/var/adm/acct/nite/jobcharge` contains the value of the node's `acct_job_charge` attribute, which is used to calculate the exclusive use fees.
- The `/var/adm/acct/nite/jobrecs` contains start job and end job records for each job step run in non-shared mode. The contents of this file are used to generate the extra service fees (accumulated temporarily in the `/var/adm/fee` file).

### ***The excluded process accounting records***

One set of files that does not appear in the preceding display is the `/var/adm/acct/nite/excl_Spaccti.date` files. These files are generated daily, one for each `paccti` file in the `/var/adm` directory. The `excl_Spaccti.date` files are in binary process accounting format (described in Appendix B.3, “The `pacct` file” on page 154), and contain the process accounting records for the job steps executed in non-shared mode. These records are kept in a separate file because they are excluded from accounting.

In other words, these records are *not* used to compute the daily total accounting files nor the command summary files. This is why the accounting system keeps those files in the `/var/adm/acct/nite` directory; you might need the information there. As an example of how to use those files, you could use the following script that merges the contents of those files to the daily command summary and then removes them:

```
#!/bin/bash
PATH=/usr/lpp/ssp/bin:/usr/sbin/acct:/bin:/usr/bin:/etc
export PATH
umask 003
_adm=${ACCTDIR:-/var/adm}
_nite=${_adm}/acct/nite
_sum=${_adm}/acct/sum
_date="`date +%Y +%m%d`"
cd ${_adm}/acct
cp sum/daycms${_date} sum/daycms-excl${_date}
acctcms nite/excl_Spacct*.${_date} > sum/excl${_date}
acctcms -s sum/daycms-excl${_date} sum/excl${_date} > sum/daycms${_date}
rm -f sum/daycms-excl${_date} sum/excl${_date}
rm -f nite/excl_Spacct*.${_date}
```

You should call such a script `/var/adm/nsiteacct`, since the `nrunacct` command automatically executes a file with that name (like `runacct` does with the `/var/adm/siteacct` file).

#### Note

The standard `nrunacct` script does not remove the `excl_Spacct*` files. You should have an automatic way to remove those files, otherwise the space in the `/var` file system will eventually be exhausted. One way to remove those files is by uncommenting the following line in the `/usr/lpp/ssp/bin/nrunacct` script:

```
# rm -f /var/adm/acct/nite/excl_Spacct*
```

#### 4.1.2.2 The files on the accounting master

The accounting master keeps its files on the `/var/adm/cacct` directory. A listing with the relevant files and directories is shown in the following display:

```

# cd /var/adm/cacct
# ls -l . nite nite/default sum sum/default
.:
total 13
drwxr-xr-x  4 adm      adm          512 Jun 28 10:07 1/
drwxr-xr-x  4 adm      adm          512 Jun 28 10:07 3/
drwxr-xr-x  4 adm      adm          512 Jun 28 10:07 5/
drwxr-xr-x  4 adm      adm          512 Jun 28 10:07 6/
drwxr-xr-x  4 adm      adm          512 Jun 28 10:07 7/
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm          352 Jun 29 12:09 active
drwxr-xr-x  3 adm      adm          512 Jun 28 10:07 fiscal/
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm           9 Jun 29 12:09 lastcycle
-rw-rw-r--  1 root     system        9 Jun 29 11:59 lastdate
drwxr-xr-x  3 adm      adm          512 Jun 29 04:00 nite/
drwxr-xr-x  2 adm      adm          512 Jun 28 10:07 node_mnt/
-rw-rw-r--  1 root     system        9 Jun 29 12:09 statefile
drwxr-xr-x  3 adm      adm          512 Jun 29 12:09 sum/

nite:
total 1
-rw-r--r--  1 root     system        0 Jun 29 04:00 accterr
drwxr-xr-x  2 adm      adm          512 Jun 29 12:09 default/

nite/default:
total 22
-rw-rw-r--  1 root     system       5411 Jun 29 12:09 cms
-rw-rw-r--  1 root     system       5411 Jun 29 12:09 daycms

sum:
total 29
drwxr-xr-x  2 adm      adm          512 Jun 29 12:09 default/
-rw-rw-r--  1 root     system       249 Jun 29 12:09 loginlog
-rw-rw-r--  1 root     system     13654 Jun 29 12:09 rpvt20000629

sum/default:
total 24
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm          5520 Jun 29 12:09 cms
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm          5520 Jun 29 12:09 daycms
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm           288 Jun 29 12:09 tacct
-rw-rw-r--  1 adm      adm           288 Jun 29 12:09 tacct20000629

```

Note that there are several differences between the standard AIX `/var/adm/acct` structure and the `/var/adm/cacct` structure:

- The state files that control the execution of `crunacct` are kept in the `/var/adm/cacct` directory, not the `nite` subdirectory.
- A subdirectory is kept for every node on the system; these subdirectories temporarily house the files that were generated on that node. The directories are identified by the corresponding node number. They are usually devoid of files.
- On the `/var/adm/cacct/nite` directory, there is one subdirectory per account class (default being the only class in the example above). These

subdirectories contain the daily command summary (*daycms*) and accumulated command summary (*cms*) reports for the 50 largest commands.

- The *sum/loginlog* file contains the last login information (taking all nodes into consideration). A sample output follows:

```
# cat loginlog
00-00-00 adm 1 3 5 6 7
00-00-00 bin 1 3 5 6 7
00-00-00 daemon 1 3 5 6 7
00-00-00 guest 1 3 5 6 7
00-00-00 imnadm 1 3 5 6 7
00-00-00 lpd 1 3 5 6 7
00-00-00 nobody 1 3 5 6 7
00-00-00 supman 1 3 5 6 7
00-00-00 sys 1 3 5 6 7
00-00-00 uuucp 1 3 5 6 7
00-06-29 gonzalo 5
00-06-29 root 1 5 6
```

The contents of *loginlog* are indicating that the last day user *gonzalo* logged on was 06/29/2000, onto node 5. It also shows that the last day user *root* logged on was 06/29/2000 and that she logged on nodes 1, 5, and 6 that day.

- The *sum/rprtrdate* is the daily report for that date (note that *date* is in a *yyyymmdd* format). It is generated by the */usr/lpp/ssp/bin/cprdaily* command and contains:
  - Reboots and lineuse information for all nodes
  - Daily total accounting report for each class
  - Daily command summary report for each class
  - Accumulated command summary report for each class
  - The last login information
- On the */var/adm/cacct/sum* directory there is one subdirectory per account class (default being the only class in the example above). These subdirectories contain:
  - The daily command summary in binary format (*daycms*)
  - The accumulated command summary in binary format (*cms*)
  - The daily total accounting files in binary format (*tacctdate*)
  - The accumulated total accounting file in binary format (*tacct*)

The */var/adm/cacct/fiscal* directory follows the same general idea. The directory contains the monthly reports (*fiscrptmm*). And there is a subdirectory with the monthly command summary files (*cmsmm*) and monthly total accounting files per class (*tacctmm*).

---

## 4.2 Accounting using LoadLeveler

If you are using LoadLeveler on your network, you can collect resource usage data for your jobs through LoadLeveler's accounting feature. When you activate accounting, LoadLeveler starts accumulating resource consumption data for completed serial and parallel jobs.

In this section we discuss the steps to get LoadLeveler up and running. For additional information, please refer to *LoadLeveler Using and Administering, Version 2.2*, SA22-7311.

### 4.2.1 The accounting data

LoadLeveler accumulates the data returned by the wait3 system call. This means that LoadLeveler accounting suffers from the constraints imposed by that system call. In particular, if the job step spawns a process without waiting for it to end, or if the step spawns a process on a remote machine through rsh, LoadLeveler will not collect accounting data for those spawned processes.

Besides all job and job step attributes, LoadLeveler collects the following resource consumption data per job step:

- Step User Time: The total amount of time running in user mode.
- Step System Time: The total amount of time spent by the system executing on behalf of the processes.
- Step Total Time: The sum of Step User Time and Step System Time.
- Step maxrss: The maximum size, in KB, of the used resident set size.
- Step ixrss: The integral of the amount of memory used by the text segments (which could have been shared with other processes) while the processes were executing. This value is expressed in KB times seconds and is calculated by adding the number of text memory pages in use each time the internal system clock ticks, and adjusted to one-second intervals.
- Step idrss: The integral of the amount of memory in the data segment of the processes (KB times seconds).
- Step isrss: Always 0 with AIX (should be the integral of the amount of memory in the stack segment of the processes).
- Step minflt: The number of page faults serviced without any I/O activity (the page was still in memory).
- Step majflt: The number of page faults serviced that required I/O activity.

- Step nswap: The number of times a process was swapped out of main memory.
- Step inblock: The number of times the file system performed actual disk reads for the processes.
- Step oublock: The number of times the file system performed actual disk writes.
- Step msgsnd: The number of IPC messages sent.
- Step msgrcv: The number of IPC messages received.
- Step nsignals: The number of signals delivered.
- Step nvcsw: The number of times a context switch resulted because a process voluntarily gave up the processor before its time slice was completed. This usually occurs while the process waits for availability of a resource.
- Step nivcsw: The number of times a context switch resulted because a higher priority process ran or because the current process exceeded its time slice.

For parallel jobs, a job step is composed of several executions in different machines. LoadLeveler aggregates the resource usage of all executions in the following manner:

1. For memory usage (maxrss, ixrss, idrss, and isrss), the job step stores the maximum value from all executions.
2. For all other values (CPU time and counters), the job step stores the sum of all executions.

#### 4.2.2 The history file

The accounting data is gathered by the machine responsible for scheduling the job. The accounting data is kept in the history file in LoadLeveler's spool directory.

```
# ls -l ~loadl/spool/
total 60
-rw-rw---- 1 loadl  loadl  14220 Jun 30 14:33 history
-rw-rw---- 1 loadl  loadl    0 Jun 30 10:52 job_queue.dir
-rw-rw---- 1 loadl  loadl  16384 Jun 30 14:33 job_queue.pag
```

Unlike AIX accounting, LoadLeveler does not summarize the resource usage data. This means that you can extract individual job data from the history file.

For example: in the following display we extract the usage data for a particular job using the `llsummary` command:

```
# llsummary -l -j cws1.4 | tail -21
Step User Time: 0+00:00:00.30000
Step System Time: 0+00:00:00.40000
Step Total Time: 0+00:00:00.70000
Step maxrss: 964
Step ixrss: 1996
Step idrss: 1564
Step isrss: 0
Step minflt: 331
Step majflt: 0
Step nswap: 0
Step inblock: 0
Step oublock: 0
Step msgsnd: 0
Step msgrcv: 0
Step nsignals: 0
Step nvcsw: 1
Step nivcsw: 17
Step Cpus: 0
Step Virtual Memory: 0 megabytes
Step Real Memory: 0 megabytes
Step Adapter Memory: 0 bytes
```

#### Note

In the preceding display, the last four lines of the `llsummary` output show the usage of consumable resources, a new scheduling facility available with LoadLeveler 2.2. Those values do not necessarily express actual resource usage.

#### 4.2.2.1 Collecting history files

Each scheduling machine keeps the accounting records for the jobs it has scheduled, and the `llsummary` command reads the contents of the local history file to extract job resource information. This means that if you have several scheduling machines, you need to run the command in each machine to get the accounting information stored there.

LoadLeveler allows you to merge all history files into a single global history file. To do so, you should use the `llacctmrg` commands as follows:

```
# llacctmrg
llacctmrg: History transferred successfully from cws1.itsc.austin.ibm.com (14220 bytes)
# ls -l ~loadl/spool/
total 60
-rw-r--r--  1 root    system   14220 Jun 30 14:46 globalhist.200006301446
-rw-rw----  1 loadl   loadl      0 Jun 30 14:46 history
-rw-rw----  1 loadl   loadl      0 Jun 30 10:52 job_queue.dir
-rw-rw----  1 loadl   loadl   16384 Jun 30 14:33 job_queue.pag
```

By default, the `llacctmrg` commands collects the history files from all scheduling machines in your cluster, creating a file named `globalhist.yyyymmddHHMM` in the spool directory of the local machine. It also removes the existing history files, creating new empty files.

To obtain reports from a global history file, you should specify the file's name in the `llsummary` command.

### 4.2.3 Setting up accounting

To set up LoadLeveler accounting you just need to modify the `ACCT` keyword on LoadLeveler's configuration file. This keyword accepts one or more flags. The possible values are:

- `A_OFF`: Turns accounting off (default value).
- `A_ON`: Turns accounting on.
- `A_DETAIL`: Enables extended accounting, where detailed resource consumption by machine and by event is stored in the history file. You have to set this flag if you want to use the `-x` flag of the `llq` and `llsummary` commands.
- `A_VALIDATE`: Turns account validation on. LoadLeveler allows you to gather usage information base on *account numbers*. With account validation on, you force your users to specify a valid account number in their jobs (using the `account_no` keyword). The valid account numbers are specified in the user stanza (with the `account` keyword).

The default value of the `ACCT` keyword can be seen in the following display:

```
$ grep -p accounting LoadL_config
#
# Specify accounting controls
#
ACCT                = A_OFF
ACCT_VALIDATION     = $(BIN)/llacctval
GLOBAL_HISTORY      = $(SPOOL)
```

The other accounting controls are the ACCT\_VALIDATION and GLOBAL\_HISTORY keywords. The former indicates which subroutine will validate the users' account number (if A\_VALIDATE is set). The latter indicates the default directory to store the global history files.

The following display shows the modified contents of the configuration file, followed by the command to force cluster reconfiguration:

```
$ grep -p accounting LoadL_config
#
# Specify accounting controls
#
ACCT                = A_ON A_DETAIL
ACCT_VALIDATION    = $(BIN)/llacctval
GLOBAL_HISTORY     = $(SPOOL)

$ llctl -g reconfig
llctl: Sent reconfig command to host cws1.itsc.austin.ibm.com.
```

#### 4.2.4 Extracting accounting information

You should use the `llsummary` command to obtain job usage information. By default, `llsummary` provides you with four reports. These reports group the accounting data by user, by class, by LoadLeveler group, and by account number. For example:

```
# llsummary
  Name   Jobs  Steps   Job Cpu   Starter Cpu   Leverage
  ausres04   1    1   0+00:00:00   0+00:00:00   (undefined)
  TOTAL     1    1   0+00:00:00   0+00:00:00   (undefined)

  Class   Jobs  Steps   Job Cpu   Starter Cpu   Leverage
  No_Class   1    1   0+00:00:00   0+00:00:00   (undefined)
  TOTAL     1    1   0+00:00:00   0+00:00:00   (undefined)

  Group   Jobs  Steps   Job Cpu   Starter Cpu   Leverage
  No_Group   1    1   0+00:00:00   0+00:00:00   (undefined)
  TOTAL     1    1   0+00:00:00   0+00:00:00   (undefined)

  Account  Jobs  Steps   Job Cpu   Starter Cpu   Leverage
  NONE     1    1   0+00:00:00   0+00:00:00   (undefined)
  TOTAL     1    1   0+00:00:00   0+00:00:00   (undefined)
```

The reports display for each category item:

- Jobs: The number of jobs
- Steps: The number of job steps
- Job Cpu: The accumulated CPU time for the job steps

- Starter Cpu: The accumulated CPU time for the LoadLeveler starter processes
- Leverage: The ratio of Job Cpu to Starter Cpu

You can also select a specific report using the `-d` flag. For example, you can ask for usage data categorized by user as follows:

```
# llsummary -d user | head
  Name  Jobs  Steps      Job Cpu  Starter Cpu  Leverage
  user1  168   168    2+15:50:42  0+00:00:58    3962.8
  user2  117   117    0+03:45:39  0+00:01:05     208.3
  user3  147   147   185+19:31:57  0+00:00:42  382245.6
  user4  269   269    74+06:47:03  0+00:01:05   98738.8
  user5  190   190    27+20:53:23  0+00:00:52   46307.8
  user6   74    74    44+12:44:33  0+00:00:13  295959.5
  user7   46    46    37+18:54:38  0+00:00:19  171835.7
  user8   80    80    7+05:27:39  0+00:00:17   36732.9
  user9    3     3    1+01:52:27  0+00:00:02   46573.5
```

The possible values for the `-d` option are `user`, `(LoadLeveler) group`, `unixgroup`, `class`, `account`, `day`, `week`, `month`, `jobid`, `jobname`, `allocated`. Another sample output, now grouping the data by month, follows:

```
# llsummary -d month
  Month  Jobs  Steps      Job Cpu  Starter Cpu  Leverage
  07/1999  350   350    32+23:35:05  0+00:02:19  20501.5
  08/1999  951   971   154+12:28:28  0+00:06:37  33628.5
  09/1999  446   446   122+07:38:25  0+00:04:14  41607.5
  10/1999  401   401   128+11:00:00  0+00:02:57  62705.1
  11/1999  986   986   142+16:44:44  0+00:05:53  34926.6
  12/1999  928   928   120+14:18:38  0+00:06:17  27638.0
  01/2000  796   796    94+16:51:51  0+00:06:59  19528.2
  02/2000  729   734    98+18:12:19  0+00:03:51  36938.3
  03/2000  263   263   124+11:58:47  0+00:00:50  215134.5
  04/2000  294   294   103+07:09:45  0+00:00:52  171634.3
  05/2000  323   323   123+07:16:26  0+00:01:33  114552.5
  06/2000  279   279   100+02:58:08  0+00:01:47   80847.6
  TOTAL  6746  6771  1346+04:53:20  0+00:44:15  43808.7
```

You can also ask for a different kind of report by using the `-r` flag. The possible values for this option are `resource` (default), `avgthroughput`, `maxthroughput`, `minthroughput`, `throughput`, and `numeric`. With the throughput reports, you can obtain several statistics about your jobs. The following example shows, categorized by class, the average time in queue, the average time in the system, and the average CPU time for all jobs:

```
# llsummary -r avgthroughput -d class
Class      Jobs  Steps  AvgQueueTime  AvgRealTime  AvgCPUTime
ParallelJobs 3110  3115   0+03:18:53   0+00:16:38   0+00:17:34
  LargeJobs  661   661   0+08:03:27   0+10:57:49   0+07:52:46
VeryLargeJob  775   775   1+16:30:14   1+02:05:04   0+17:54:39
  SmallJobs   75    75    0+05:03:03   0+01:33:45   0+01:09:22
  HugeJobs  265   265   4+01:49:46   2+04:52:08   1+11:35:25
VerySmallJob  291   291   0+03:58:27   0+00:40:59   0+00:32:36
  MediumJobs  291   291   0+06:49:07   0+00:25:45   0+00:22:11
AboveAvgJobs  613   622   0+07:28:03   0+04:08:48   0+03:15:01
  WSPJobs    48    48    0+00:28:29   0+01:34:15   0+01:34:27
  TestJobs   32    32    1+03:13:03   0+13:32:36   0+13:21:46
  ALL       6161  6175   0+13:17:00   0+07:25:39   0+05:13:56
```

Please refer to the *LoadLeveler Using and Administering, Version 2.2, SA22-7311*, to obtain additional information about the report options of the `llsummary` command.

#### 4.2.4.1 Using the LoadLeveler APIs

LoadLeveler provides one function, `GetHistory`, to extract accounting data from the history files. If `llsummary`'s options do not attend your needs for extracting usage data, then you will need to build your own program using that routine. `GetHistory` is documented in *LoadLeveler Using and Administering, Version 2.2, SA22-7311*, and the `samples/llphist` directory contains a sample program that uses it.

---

## Chapter 5. Third-party accounting solutions

The AIX base operating system provides all the basics needed to start and collect accounting information on your system, but you can be in situations where the information is either not complete, or the output format is not as elegant as you would like.

The solution to these situations might be to develop your own displays or applications to format the data coming from the accounting tool. You might also look for third party solutions. We have browsed the Internet, in search of such software, and found some that you might find interesting. We did not have time to test the software we found, and the information presented here was extracted from the software's respective Web sites, with the agreement of the various companies.

All of the products mentioned here are supported on AIX version 4.3.3. For each of them, we give a summary of their functions, their advantages compared to AIX, and an how they appear (if possible).

---

### 5.1 COSchargeback

COSchargeback is a member of OSM's COSMOS products, so it has a general flexibility in terms of being able to be easily configured to comply with an IT organization's existing policy. If such policies do not already exist, COSchargeback provides an ideal setting for IT managers to implement new policy in the areas of:

- Resource management
- Resource accounting
- IT cost allocation
- IT cost monitoring

COSchargeback is a potent resource accounting and back-charging management solution for UNIX computing environments. In addition to its prime purpose of accounting for system resource usage (across multiple servers) and producing consolidated reports for billing users, you may also collect information to be used in planning the needs of future computing capacity.

COSchargeback provides a cost-effective charge-back solution that:

- Charge users, groups or business units for the system resources they consume

- Understand how your IT budget is being spent
- Identify which business units use your resources more than others
- Implement a charge-back scheme to make business units accountable
- Bill clients accurately for their use of a shared resource in an ASP service

### 5.1.1 Overview

COSchargeback is a resource accounting and chargeback software product. It allows IT managers to measure and calculate exactly the amount of system resources each department or business unit uses and, if required, how much each should be charged.

Particularly in the case of server consolidation projects and the world of ASPs, the cost of resources consumed must be allocated accurately and fairly to the consumers. A resource accounting and chargeback policy implemented through COSchargeback provides:

- Information to business unit heads on their use of IT and its associated cost
- Improved communication and alignment between the IT department and business units
- Opportunities to improve service levels
- Information to IT managers about which items could be targeted for cost reduction or outsourcing
- Information to IT managers about past investment decisions
- Information to accurately monitor and control costs
- Information to enable capacity and upgrade planning

### 5.1.2 Features

Audit information is collected from any defined node or system on the network. Each node has one or more accounting programs, each gathering data from the services running on that system. Resource usage can be attributed to individual users, defined groups, departments or business units. COSchargeback:

- Collects information from 13 versions of UNIX
- Gathers information from databases and applications
- Uses standard audit data, imposing no additional system overhead

- Collects data automatically and allows the collection times to be completely customized
- Acquires information about users on a network-wide basis, as opposed to a single "logged in" user
- Allows any number of charging rates to be defined
- Calculates usage across different users, groups or departments
- Supports the production of extensive reports
- Integrates with Microsoft Excel for extensive data analysis
- Enables day-to-day usage information to be used for trend analysis and capacity planning
- Provides business units with a view of accounting charges for each defined billing period
- Allows reports to be easily produced for all systems across the network from a single host

### 5.1.3 Chargeback software components

OSM's charge-back software - COSchargeback – has two software components: Accountants (or agents) and the Console.

Here are the definitions for some essential elements of the COSchargeback solution:

- Accountants (agents)

On every COSchargeback node, each resource for which accounting is necessary requires an Accountant. The Accountant keeps track of how Services have been used over a specified period by collecting audit data. Typically, a COSchargeback node has Accountants for each:

- Operating system
- Database server
- Database instance
- Application

- Services

A COSchargeback Service consists of a number of similar Resource Types grouped together under a unique name.

- Resource Types

A Resource Type is the smallest measurable component within a COSchargeback node, such as:

- Sessions
- Connections
- CPU Usage
- System Memory
- Disk
- Processors Count
- Characters Read
- Characters Written
- Blocks Read
- Blocks Written
- Statements
- Committed Transactions.

- Resource Manager

COSchargeback's Resource Manager gathers audit information from target resources contained within accountants (or agents) and services. The information collected includes:

- How much of the resource has been used.
- Who, or what, used the resource.
- Where on the network the resource was used.
- When the resource was used.

- COSchargeback Console

The COSchargeback Console forms a central point of data collection from all COSchargeback accountants. All data is stored here and can be queried by COSchargeback's reporting tools and with Microsoft Excel.

- Time-banding

When using COSchargeback, IT managers can define any number of different time-bands, allowing for the cost of usage to vary according to time and date.

- Reporting

Through the Output Format Description tool, users can define the look and format of COSchargeback reports. There are standard facilities to produce useful reports directly from COSchargeback and, additionally, there are facilities to export the data in a format that can be used by third party software, such as Microsoft Excel.

- **Chargeback Options**  
Every Resource Type can have a charge description applied to it, in order to improve cost allocation and chargeback.
- **Integration with Microsoft Excel**  
COSchargeback integrates with Microsoft Excel through an Excel menu option that automatically retrieves COSchargeback data from pre-existing Excel. The data can then be worked on and analyzed extensively.
- **Application Integration**  
COSchargeback integrates with any application that can report information to the standard UNIX system accounting processes. In addition, OSM is able to integrate COSchargeback to other applications through its customizable API.
- **COSchargeback and COSMOS**  
Installation of other products from the COSMOS operations management suite is not a prerequisite for installing COSchargeback. However, adding other COSMOS products brings further benefits to COSchargeback in functionality and control.
- **Integration with BMC Software's PATROL**  
COSMOS integrates with the PATROL environment, providing proactive event management by means of a dedicated Knowledge Module (KM) available from OSM.

To get more information about this product, visit their web site at <http://www.coschargeback.com>.

---

## 5.2 UNISOL® JobAcct™

UNISOL JobAcct is used by organizations to provide system access and services to other organizations. UNISOL JobAcct is also used by organizations that need to distribute a user's work across multiple projects while maintaining reasonable control over the way system resource usage is distributed among the different projects. UNISOL JobAcct's ability to produce reports for many or all machines on the network make it easy to track all system resources available.

UNISOL JobAcct can be easily customized to fit your local installation requirements and can greatly simplify the resource chargeback task faced by many installations, while meeting government and government contractor reporting criteria.

### 5.2.1 Overview

UNISOL JobAcct is a job accounting and chargeback software package for UNIX and Windows NT systems and Oracle databases, and it was the first true project level charge-back product, first introduced in 1988.

UNISOL JobAcct performs actual cost accounting and chargeback for each user, group, project and cost center, or, proportional chargeback on a project/department level. Accounting can be restricted to specific commands or can include all commands, with individual charges broken down into:

- Connect time
- CPU usage
- Disk usage
- Memory usage
- Disk I/O operations
- Pages printed
- Miscellaneous charges
- Database usage

Reports are produced with charges itemized for each user, group, project charge-back number and cost center, and can include addresses for direct mailing to users and their organizations. Reports can be easily added or modified with awk or other report writing programs. ASCII reports (flat files) can also be generated and easily reformatted for use with databases or other financial programs.

Features of UNISOL JobAcct include:

- Allocation of charges to many project charge-back numbers by using user-level commands to change project charge-back numbers within a terminal session. System-wide or personal aliases can be used to refer to charge-back numbers.
- Charging different rates for prime-time, non-prime-time and reduced-charge hours, for each charge-back number.
- Variable accounting periods (in one-day intervals) for each project, user or group.
- Flexible distribution of disk charges among many charge-back numbers. Disk usage accounting includes minimum and maximum charges as well as standard disk usage averaging.
- ISP Accounting. Allows for set amounts of available resources for a minimum charge per month while charging for extra resources. Accommodates ISP-type accounting by providing a set of discounted

resources for a minimum monthly fee while charging different rates beyond the minimum resource usage.

- University Accounting. Keeps track of budgets by individual users and disables login or produces a warning when budget is exceeded.
- Users may individually (pre)view their accounting charges (up to the last available accounting summary) for each billing period.
- Reports may be easily combined/produced for all/many systems on the network from a single host.
- Generation of reports indicating logins of users and teletypes, and commands executed by each user (both detailed and summary reports).
- Summary reporting for a top-down view of the overall system or charge-back level accounting charges, including percentage information (of both resource usage and revenue sources) for each chargeable field, and generate pie-charts and bar-charts of system usage at the charge-back number level.
- Direct account billing and project-level budget tracking and reporting.
- A user-friendly Motif graphical user interface (Open Look for Sun Systems) simplifies the configuration of JobAcct control tables and the generation of standard and/or ad-hoc reports.
- Wildcards can be used when configuring user project files, thus increasing flexibility and reducing the amount of time spent updating project configuration files.

In order to perform budgeting and accounting by project, UNISOL JobAcct replaces the standard UNIX accounting system. A collector copy of JobAcct must be run on every machine for which accounting needs to be collected. A master version of the software runs on the server responsible for generating reports for all of the machines on the network.

### **5.2.2 Oracle database accounting**

UNISOL JobAcct tracks database usage (for Oracle databases) for the following resources:

- Session connect time
- CPU usage
- Disk I/O operations
- Memory usage, and
- SQLNet I/O

Unlike other implementations of Oracle database accounting, UNISOL JobAcct does not use sampling to collect database usage data because that impacts system performance and may miss data if the sampling interval is too large. UNISOL JobAcct implements Oracle accounting by using database triggers to capture Oracle session activity when the session ends and saves the accounting information within the database itself. The database accounting data is available for inclusion in all of JobAcct's standard reports.

### 5.2.3 UNISOL JobAcct user interface

UNISOL JobAcct provides user-level commands for the generation of summary data and reports, suitable for inclusion in shell-scripts or execution from cron. An Application Management Interface is also available for both the curses and X-Windows environments (Motif or Open Look) for the effortless maintenance of product tables and control files, and for the generation of usage and billing reports. The Motif and Open Look interfaces also allow cursor manipulation of the menus and forms, and uses mnemonics and user-defined accelerators. In addition, context-sensitive help makes learning how to use the user interface an easy task.

Figure 23 shows a Motif display with the main product window, the menu bar, and an expanded Management menu showing the functions used to manage system-wide projects, user and project assignments and other product control files:



Figure 23. UNISOL JobAcct management menu

### 5.2.4 UNISOL JobAcct reports

Reports are produced with charges itemized for each user, group, project charge-back number and cost centers, and can include addresses for direct

mailing to users and their organizations. New reports can be easily added (or charge-back reports can be easily changed) with awk or other report writing programs.

The reports currently available through JobAcct are:

- Detailed process accounting report
- Per-user command-usage report
- Detailed user login report
- Summary charge-back report
- Per-user charge-back report (default)
- Per-group charge-back report
- Per-chargenumber charge-back report
- Per-chargegroup charge-back report
- Top-level resource usage report
- Top-level fiscal report
- Top-level pie-charts showing system utilization (postscript printers)
- Top-level bar-charts showing system utilization (X displays)
- Budget Status reports (by uid or project) and automatic low-budget notification reports.

ASCII reports (flat files) can also be generated and easily reformatted for inclusion into databases or other financial programs.

The following Motif display shows the types of Summary Reports available from the Application Management Interface of UNISOL JobAcct:

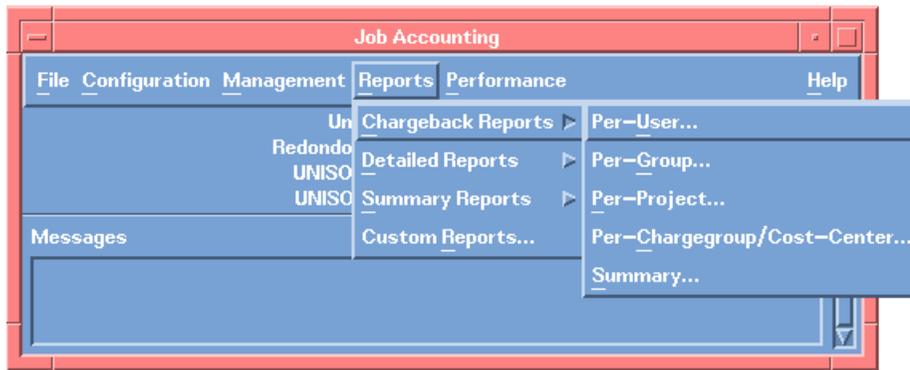


Figure 24. UNISOL JobAcct Summary Reports

Reports can be displayed on the display, sent to the printer, or saved in a file. Reports can also be produced for any specific range of days and hosts providing a flexible accounting period and reporting scheme. Figure 25 shows a Motif display with a weekly per-user charge-back report:

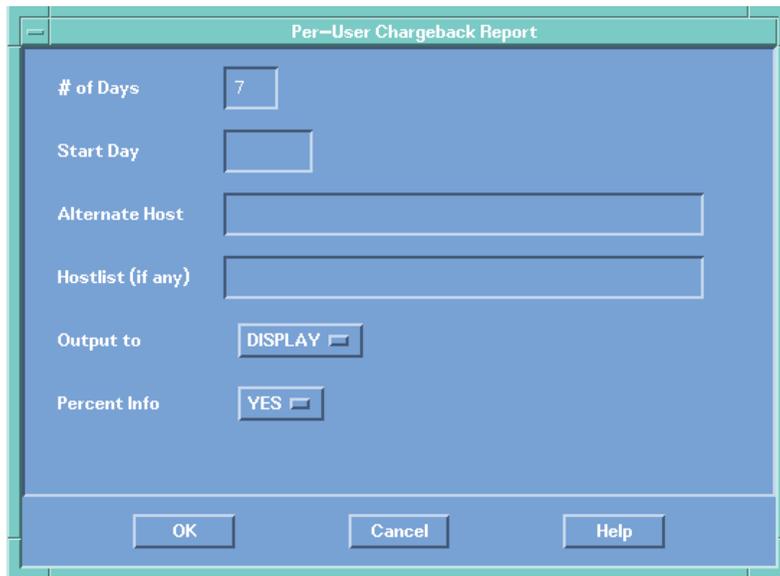


Figure 25. UNISOL JobAcct Chargeback Report

### 5.2.5 Performance monitoring

This optional module monitors system activity and summarizes system performance data at user-selected intervals.

Under normal operation, data is automatically collected (from system startup time) into daily summary reports and data may be independently analyzed for each day under user control and may be summarized and displayed to the display or printed.

Performance data summaries can be kept on-line for months allowing for the easy comparison of system performance from different time periods, or can be archived to tape for retrieval and analysis at a later time. Ad hoc monitoring and reporting is also supported providing live system monitoring and the generation of short-term reports.

The information that is recorded, reported, and analyzed by the System Performance Monitoring option includes:

- Processes (in run queue, blocked or swapped out)
- Memory Usage (used, available)
- Paging Activity (pages in, out)
- Swap Space Usage,
- Disk I/O (number of operations)
- Faults (interrupts, system calls, context switches)
- CPU usage (user, system, idle time)
- System Tables (files, inodes, processes, texts)
- User Logins
- Load Average

The summarized data can be further analyzed to provide an insight into system resource utilization and possible expansion needs, while providing graphs of interesting events suitable for inclusion in management reports or computer equipment expansion justifications.

X-Windows release of Performance Monitoring provides clear graphical representations of the collected information, and supports zoom capability and Postscript or Laserjet formatted graphs.

To get more information about this product, visit <http://www.unisol.com>.

---

## 5.3 CIMS for UNIX

CIMS for UNIX is an enterprise-wide solution for system accounting, resource

management, project accounting, software tracking, capacity reporting, and chargeback. It integrates information from diverse UNIX platforms, creating presentation graphics for department heads, financial managers, project managers, and system administrators. CIMS for UNIX creates colorful pie charts, bar charts, area graphs, and line plots in two dimensions through its point-and-click GUI.

### 5.3.1 Overview

CIMS for UNIX collects detailed information on resources consumed, including CPU time, connect time, I/Os, pages printed, software package usage, and disk storage. It displays resources used and resource charges in flexible textual or graphic reports. CIMS for UNIX tracks department activity, user sessions, project accounts, software packages, databases, in-house applications, file systems, servers, and workstations. CIMS for UNIX also collects usage information from Oracle, DB2, and other databases to provide resource usage details not found in UNIX accounting files. With CIMS for UNIX, sites can track and cost-justify databases and equitably allocate database costs to departments, projects, and users.

This product currently utilizes a UNIX Motif GUI interface.

### 5.3.2 Benefits

Here are the main benefits of using CIMS for UNIX:

- Correctly allocates IT costs to resources and or projects.
- Accurately collects UNIX metrics for chargeback.
- Identifies applications and resources used by projects.
- Shows the software packages accessed by users.
- Tracks database usage trends for Oracle and DB2.
- Tracks usage trends on specific servers and workstations.

Multiple scenarios can be established, when time comes to deploy this software:

- Collects system accounting information from multiple UNIX platforms, including multiuser systems, servers, and workstations.
- Integrates information from diverse UNIX systems to provide enterprise-wide reporting of resource usage from a single server.
- Delivers enterprise chargeback when used with CIMS Desktop, CIMS for MVS, CIMS for NT, and CIMS for OpenVMS.

### 5.3.3 Sample reporting

CIMS UNIX provides native reporting capabilities as well as integration with CIMS Desktop to produce a wide range of reports. A list of the reports that can be produced using CIMS follows.

First let's start with the CIMS UNIX Native reports:

- Node Utilization by Node
- Node Utilization by User
- DB2 Database Activity
- Oracle Database Activity
- Oracle User I/O Activity

Here is an example of what the Node Utilization by Node looks like:

| Resource Management and Chargeback |        | CIMS Lab, Inc.                   |                      |                       |                        | Run Date: 14-Dec-1999 |                    |               |        |
|------------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------|--------|
| CIMS/UNIX Version V04.0            |        | Node Utilization                 |                      |                       |                        |                       |                    |               | Page 1 |
|                                    |        | From 1-Dec-1999 Thru 14-Dec-1999 |                      |                       |                        |                       |                    |               |        |
| Node Name                          | Logins | Connect Hours                    | Number of Images Run | Block Weeks Allocated | I/O Requests Thousands | User CPU Minutes      | System CPU Minutes | Memory Demand |        |
| daisy                              | 0      | 0.000                            | 5005                 | 4140014.25            | 47.394                 | 4.738                 | 24.082             | 541           |        |
| dawg                               | 61     | 330.570                          | 28753                | 2785028.00            | 253.347                | 45.480                | 78.191             | 3314          |        |
| duke                               | 23     | 61.327                           | 21897                | 2167909.00            | 92.810                 | 171.003               | 200.215            | 21962         |        |
| goofy                              | 0      | 0.000                            | 3015                 | 4756629.00            | 34.575                 | 0.743                 | 5.074              | 70            |        |
| minnie                             | 23     | 48.058                           | 100747               | 2088311.88            | 6047.350               | 19.162                | 9.856              | 0             |        |
| odie                               | 2      | 0.144                            | 20169                | 6791995.00            | 28.033                 | 7.048                 | 4.610              | 2             |        |
| ralph                              | 2      | 1.753                            | 23975                | 4917820.00            | 488.935                | 16.774                | 51.329             | 858           |        |
| ren                                | 13     | 130.935                          | 8917                 | 7764941.50            | 170.700                | 157.330               | 123.868            | 12            |        |
| ruff                               | 10     | 29.759                           | 21340                | 2792705.00            | 22.731                 | 14.578                | 6.759              | 14            |        |
| sparky                             | 13     | 41.805                           | 5656                 | 3039224.25            | 188.408                | 4.281                 | 37.630             | 227           |        |
| underdog                           | 11     | 4.593                            | 2735                 | 3712311.00            | 0.000                  | 1.728                 | 2.876              | 4             |        |
| =====                              |        |                                  |                      |                       |                        |                       |                    |               |        |
| TOTAL                              | 158    | 648.944                          | 242209               | 44956888.88           | 7374.283               | 442.865               | 544.490            | 27004         |        |

Figure 26. Example of the Node Utilization by node report

Now, let's see the more advanced possibilities with the CIMS desktop:

- Charges by Cost Center
- Charges by Node
- Charges by Specific Node
- Charges by Resource Group
- System Connect Time by Cost Center
- Oracle Connect Time By Instance
- Oracle Connect Time By Node
- Oracle Disk Sorts by Cost Center & Instance

- Oracle Records by CPU
- Oracle Session CPU by Cost Center
- Oracle Session CPU by Instance
- Charges by Oracle Instance

Figure 27 shows an example of what the Charges by Specific Node looks like:

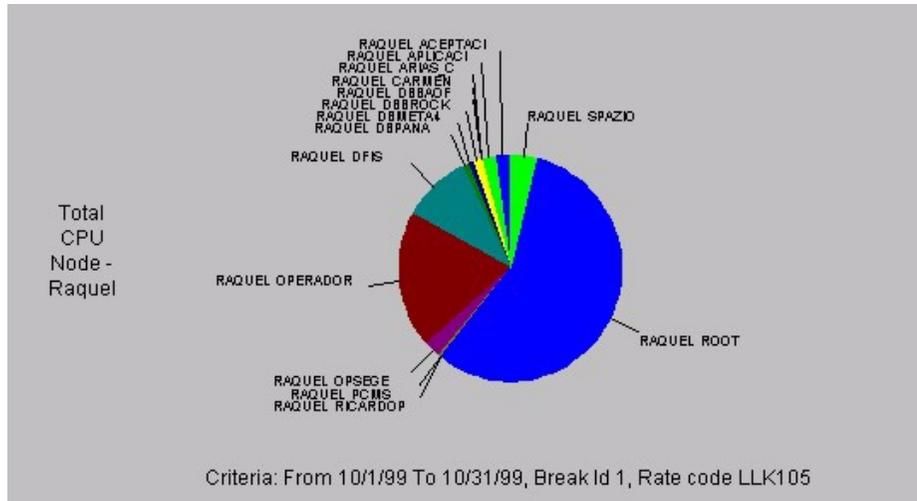


Figure 27. Example of the charges by specific node report

To get more information about this product, visit <http://www.cimslab.com>.

## Appendix A. Audit events

Table 7 lists all known events in AIX 4.3.3. A description of each event is also provided.

Table 7. Known events in AIX 4.3.3

| USER/SYSTEM | AUDIT EVENT     | Description   |
|-------------|-----------------|---|
| fork        | PROC_Create     | Creates a new process.                                |
| exit        | PROC_Delete     | Terminates the calling process.                       |
| exec        | PROC_Execute    | Executes a new program.                               |
| setuidx     | PROC_RealUID    |   |
|             | PROC_AuditID    |   |
|             | PROC_SetUserIDs |   |
| setgidx     | PROC_RealGID    |   |
| accessx     | FILE_Accessx    | Determines the accessibility of a file.               |
| statacl     | FILE_StatAcl    | Retrieves the access control information for a file.  |
| statpriv    | FILE_StatPriv   |   |
| revoke      | FILE_Revoke     |   |
| frevoke     | FILE_Frevoke    | Revokes access to a file by other processes.          |
| usrinfo     | PROC_Environ    | Change various piece of user information data.        |
| sigaction   | PROC_SetSignal  | Action to take upon delivery of signal.               |
| setrlimit   | PROC_Limits     | Controls max system resource consumption.             |
| nice        | PROC_SetPri     | Use of the nice function.                             |
| setpri      | PROC_Setpri     | Sets fixed priority for process.                      |
| setpriv     | PROC_Privilege  | Changes one or more privilege vectors for process.    |
| settimer    | PROC_Settimer   | Sets current value for a specified system wide timer. |
| adjtime     | PROC_Adjtime    | Changes system clock.                                 |

| <b>USER/SYSTEM</b> | <b>AUDIT EVENT</b> | <b>Description</b>                                  |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| ptrace             | PROC_Debug         | Traces the execution of another process.            |
| kill               | PROC_Kill          | Sends a signal to a process or group of processes.  |
| setpgid            | PROC_setpgid       | Sets the process id group.                          |
| ld_loadmodule      | PROC_Load          | Loads new object module into process address space. |
|                    | PROC_LoadMember    |   |
|                    | PROC_LoadError     |   |
| setgroups          | PROC_SetGroups     | Change process concurrent group set.                |
| sysconfig          | PROC_Sysconfig     | Calls to the sysconfig subroutine.                  |
| audit              | AUD_It             |   |
| auditbin           | AUD_Bin_Def        | Modification of auditbin.                           |
| auditevents        | AUD_Events         | Modification of Events.                             |
| auditobj           | AUD_Objects        | Modification of auditobj.                           |
| auditproc          | AUD_Proc           |   |
| acct               | ACCT_Disable       | Disables system accounting.                         |
|                    | ACCT_Enable        | Enables system accounting.                          |
| open and create    | FILE_Open          | Calls to the open subroutine.                       |
|                    | TCB_Leak           |   |
|                    | TCB_Mod            |   |
|                    | TCB_Exec           |   |
| read               | FILE_Read          | Reads from file descriptor.                         |
| write              | FILE_Write         | Writes data to descriptor.                          |
| close              | FILE_Close         | Closes open file descriptor.                        |
| link               | FILE_Link          | Creates new directory entry for file.               |
| unlink             | FILE_Unlink        | Removes a file system object.                       |
| rename             | FILE_Rename        | Changes name of a file system object.               |

| <b>USER/SYSTEM</b> | <b>AUDIT EVENT</b> | <b>Description</b>                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| chown              | FILE_Owner         | Changes file ownership.                               |
| chmod              | FILE_Mode          | Changes file mode.                                    |
| fchmod             | FILE_Fchmod        | Changes file permission for file descriptor.          |
| fchown             | FILE_Fchown        | Changes ownership for file descriptor.                |
| truncate           | FILE_Truncate      | Calls to the truncate subroutine.                     |
| symlink            | FILE_Symlink       | Creates symbolic link.                                |
| pipe               | FILE_Pipe          | Creates unnamed pipe.                                 |
| mknod              | FILE_Mknod         | Calls to the mknod subroutine.                        |
| fcntl              | FILE_Dupfd         | Duplicates file descriptor.                           |
| fscntl             | FS_Extend          | Extends file system.                                  |
| mount              | FS_Mount           | Connects file system to named directory.              |
| umount             | FS_Umount          | Disconnects mounted file system.                      |
| chacl              | FILE_Acl           | Changes file access control list (ACL)                |
|                    | FILE_Facl          | Changes ACL for file descriptor.                      |
| chpriv             | FILE_Privilege     | Calls to the chpriv subroutine.                       |
|                    | FILE_Chpriv        | Changes privilege control list.                       |
|                    | FILE_Fchpriv       | Changes PCL for file descriptor.                      |
| chdir              | FS_Chdir           | Changes current working directory.                    |
| fchdir             | FS_Fchdir          | Changes current working directory by file descriptor. |
| chroot             | FS_Chroot          | Changes meaning of "/" for current process.           |
| rmdir              | FS_Rmdir           | Removes directory object.                             |
| mkdir              | FS_Mkdir           | Creates directory.                                    |
| utimes             | FILE_Utimes        | Calls to the utimes subroutine.                       |
| stat               | FILE_Stat          | Calls to the stat subroutine.                         |
| msgget             | MSG_Create         | Creates new message queue.                            |

| <b>USER/SYSTEM</b> | <b>AUDIT EVENT</b> | <b>Description</b>   |
|--------------------|--------------------|--|
| msgrcv             | MSG_Read           | Receives message from message queue.                           |
| msgsnd             | MSG_Write          | Sends message on message queue.                                |
| msgctl             | MSG_Delete         | Removes message queue.   |
|                    | MSG_Owner          | Changes ownership and access right of message queue.           |
|                    | MSG_Mode           | Queries access rights of message queue.                        |
| semget             | SEM_Create         | Creates new semaphore set.                                     |
| semop              | SEM_Op             | Increases or decreases one or more semaphore.                  |
| semctl             | SEM_Delete         | Deletes semaphore set.   |
|                    | SEM_Owner          | Changes ownership and access rights for semaphore set.         |
|                    | SEM_Mode           | Queries semaphore set access rights.                           |
| shmget             | SHM_Create         | Creates new shared memory segment.                             |
| shmat              | SHM_Open           | Calls to the shmat subroutine with Open option.                |
| shmat              | SHM_Detach         | Calls to the shmat subroutine with Detach option.              |
| shmctl             | SHM_Close          | Closes shared memory segment.                                  |
|                    | SHM_Owner          | Changes ownership and access rights for shared memory segment. |
|                    | SHM_Mode           | Queries access rights of shared memory segment.                |
| tcpip user level   | TCPIP_config       | Logs changes to TCP/IP interface.                              |
|                    | TCPIP_host_id      | Logs attempts to change system hostname.                       |
|                    | TCPIP_route        | Logs changes to routing table.                                 |
|                    | TCPIP_connect      | Calls to the connect subroutine.                               |
|                    | TCPIP_data_out     | Data sent.   |

| USER/SYSTEM        | AUDIT EVENT     | Description                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------|---|
|                    | TCPIP_data_in   | Data received.                                  |
|                    | TCPIP_access    |   |
|                    | TCPIP_set_time  | Logs attempt to change system time via network. |
| tcpip kernel level | TCP_ksocket     | Calls to the kernel TCPIP kernel services.      |
|                    | TCP_ksocketpair |   |
|                    | TCP_kclose      |   |
|                    | TCP_ksetopt     |   |
|                    | TCP_kbind       |   |
|                    | TCP_klisten     |   |
|                    | TCP_kconnect    |   |
|                    | TCP_kaccept     |   |
|                    | TCP_kshutdown   |   |
|                    | TCP_ksend       |   |
|                    | TCP_kreceive    |   |
| tsm                | USER_Login      | Calls to the Terminal State Management service. |
|                    | PORT_Locked     |   |
|                    | TERM_Logout     |   |
| rlogind/telnetd    | USER_Exit       |   |
| sysck              | SYSCK_Check     | Calls to the sysck function.                    |
|                    | SYSCK_Update    |   |
|                    | SYSCK_Install   |   |
|                    | SYSCK_Delete    |   |
| tcbck              | TCBCK_Check     | Calls to the tcbck function.                    |
|                    | TCBCK_Update    |   |
|                    | TCBCK_Delete    |   |

| <b>USER/SYSTEM</b> | <b>AUDIT EVENT</b> | <b>Description</b>                   |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| usrck              | USER_Check         | Calls to the usrck function.         |
|                    | USRCK_Error        |                                      |
| logout             | USER_Logout        | Calls to the logout subroutine.      |
| chsec              | PORT_Change        |                                      |
| chuser             | USER_Change        | Calls to the chuser subroutine.      |
| rmuser             | USER_Remove        | Removes a user.                      |
| mkuser             | USER_Create        | Creates a user.                      |
| setgroups          | USER_SetGroups     | Calls to the setgroups subroutine.   |
| setsenv            | USER_SetEnv        | Calls to the setenv subroutine.      |
| su                 | USER_SU            | Calls to the su subroutine.          |
| grpck              | GROUP_User         | Calls to the grpchk subroutine.      |
|                    | GROUP_Adms         |                                      |
| chgroup            | GROUP_Change       | Calls to the chgroup subroutine.     |
| mkgroup            | GROUP_Create       | Calls to the mkgroup subroutine.     |
| rmgroup            | GROUP_Remove       | Calls to the rmgroup subroutine.     |
| passwd             | PASSWORD_Change    | Changes a user password.             |
| pwdadm             | PASSWORD_Flags     | Calls to the pwdadm subroutine.      |
| pwdck              | PASSWORD_Check     | Calls to the pwdck subroutine.       |
|                    | PASWORD_Ckerr      |                                      |
| startsrc           | SRC_Start          | Starts a system resource controller. |
| stopsrc            | SRC_Stop           | Stops a system resource controller.  |
| addssys            | SRC_Addssys        | Calls to the addsys subroutine.      |
| chssys             | SRC_Chssys         | Calls to the chssys subroutine.      |
| addserver          | SRC_Addserver      | Calls to the addserver subroutine.   |
| chserver           | SRC_Chserver       | Calls to the chserver subroutine.    |
| rmsys              | SRC_Delssys        | Calls to the rmsys subroutine.       |
| rmserver           | SRC_Delserver      | Calls to the rmserver subroutine.    |

| <b>USER/SYSTEM</b> | <b>AUDIT EVENT</b> | <b>Description</b>               |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| enq                | ENQUE_admin        | Calls to the enq subroutine.     |
| qdaemon            | ENQUE_exec         | Calls to the qdaemon subroutine. |
| sendmail           | SENDMAIL_Config    | Calls to the sendmail function.  |
|                    | SENDMAIL_ToFile    |                                  |
|                    | MAIL_ToUser        |                                  |
| at                 | AT_JobAdd          | Calls to the at function.        |
|                    | At_JobRemove       |                                  |
| cron               | CRON_JobRemove     | Calls to the cron function.      |
|                    | CRON_JobAdd        |                                  |
|                    | CRON_Start         | Start of a cron job.             |
|                    | CRON_Finish        | End of a cron job.               |
| nvload             | NVRAM_Config       | Access to the NVRAM.             |
| cfgmgr             | DEV_Configure      | Calls to the cfgmgr function.    |
| chdev and mkdev    | DEV_Change         | Device changed.                  |
| mkdev              | DEV_Create         | Device created.                  |
|                    | DEV_Start          | Device started.                  |
| installp           | INSTALLP_Inst      | Calls to the installp function.  |
|                    | INSTALLP_Exec      |                                  |
| rmdev              | DEV_Stop           | Device stopped.                  |
|                    | DEV_Unconfigure    | Device unconfigured.             |
|                    | DEV_Remove         | Device removed.                  |
| DSMIT              | DSMIT_start        | Calls to the dsmit function.     |
|                    | DSMIT_end          |                                  |
| lchangelv          | LVM_ChangeLV       | Calls to the lvm function.       |
| lextendlv          | LVM_ChangeLV       |                                  |
| lreducelv          | LVM_ChangeLV       |                                  |
| lchangevpv         | LVM_ChangeVG       |                                  |

| <b>USER/SYSTEM</b>         | <b>AUDIT EVENT</b> | <b>Description</b> |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| ldeletepv                  | LVM_ChangeVG       |                    |
| linstallpv                 | LVM_ChangeVG       |                    |
| lcreatelv                  | LVM_CreateLV       |                    |
| lcreatevg                  | LVM_CreateVG       |                    |
| ldeletepv                  | LVM_DeleteVG       |                    |
| rmlv                       | LVM_DeleteLV       |                    |
| lvaryoffvg                 | LVM_VaryoffVG      |                    |
| lvaryonvg                  | LVM_VaryonVG       |                    |
| logical volume operations  | LVM_AddLV          |                    |
|                            | LVM_KDeleteLV      |                    |
|                            | LVM_ExtendLV       |                    |
|                            | LVM_ReduceLV       |                    |
|                            | LVM_KChangeLV      |                    |
|                            | LVM_AvoidLV        |                    |
| physical volume operations | LVM_MissingPV      |                    |
|                            | LVM_AddPV          |                    |
|                            | LVM_AddMissPV      |                    |
|                            | LVM_DeletePV       |                    |
|                            | LVM_RemovePV       |                    |
|                            | LVM_AddVGSA        |                    |
|                            | LVM_DeleteVGSA     |                    |
| volume group operations    | LVM_SetupVG        |                    |
|                            | LVM_DefineVG       |                    |
|                            | LVM_KDeleteVG      |                    |
|                            | LVM_ChgQuorum      |                    |

| <b>USER/SYSTEM</b> | <b>AUDIT EVENT</b> | <b>Description</b>                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
|                    | LVM_Chg1016        |                                       |
|                    | LVM_UnlockDisk     |                                       |
|                    | LVM_LockDisk       |                                       |
| backup and restore | BACKUP_Export      | Calls to the backup/restore function. |
|                    | BACKUP_Priv        |                                       |
|                    | RESTORE_Import     |                                       |
| shell              | USER_Shell         | Access to the shell.                  |
| reboot             | USER_Reboot        | Calls to the reboot function.         |
|                    | PROC_Reboot        |                                       |



---

## Appendix B. Internal structure of the accounting files

In this appendix, we describe the internal structure of the binary accounting files. The structure of most the accounting files can be found in the /usr/include directory (contained in the bos.adt.include fileset), with the single exception of the command summary files.

---

### B.1 The tacct file

The structure of the tacct files can be found in /usr/include/sys/tacct.h. Note that the original file indicates that the ta\_io values are given in 512 byte values, which is not true. They are given in 1024 byte values.

```
/* Float arrays below contain prime and non-prime components */
struct tacct {
    uid_t      ta_uid;          /* userid */
    char       ta_name[8];     /* login name */
    float      ta_cpu[2];      /* cum. cpu time (mins) */
    float      ta_kcore[2];    /* cum kcore-mins */
    float      ta_io[2];       /* cum. chars xferred (KB) */
    float      ta_rw[2];       /* cum. blocks read/written */
    float      ta_con[2];      /* cum. connect time (mins) */
    float      ta_du;          /* cum. disk usage */
    long       ta_qsys;        /* queueing sys charges (pgs) */
    float      ta_fee;         /* fee for special services */
    long       ta_pc;          /* count of processes */
    unsigned short ta_sc;      /* count of login sessions */
    unsigned short ta_dc;      /* count of disk samples */
};
```

---

### B.2 The wtmp file

The structure of the utmp and wtmp files can be found in /usr/include/utmp.h.

```
struct utmp
{
    char ut_user[8] ;          /* User login name */
    char ut_id[14] ;          /* /etc/inittab id */
    char ut_line[12] ;        /* device name (console, lnxx) */
    short ut_type ;           /* type of entry */
    pid_t ut_pid ;           /* process id */
    struct exit_status
    {
        short e_termination ; /* Process termination status */
        short e_exit ;         /* Process exit status */
    };
};
```

```

    }
    ut_exit ;                               /* The exit status of a process
                                           * marked as DEAD_PROCESS.
                                           */
    time_t ut_time ;                       /* time entry was made */
    char ut_host[16] ;                     /* host name */
} ;

/*      Definitions for ut_type                                     */

#define EMPTY                0
#define RUN_LVL              1
#define BOOT_TIME           2
#define OLD_TIME             3
#define NEW_TIME             4
#define INIT_PROCESS        5          /* Process spawned by "init" */
#define LOGIN_PROCESS       6          /* A "getty" process waiting for login */
#define USER_PROCESS        7          /* A user process */
#define DEAD_PROCESS        8
#define ACCOUNTING          9

```

---

### B.3 The pacct file

The structure of the pacct files can be found in /usr/include/sys/acct.h.

```

/*
 * Accounting structures
 * these use a comp_t type which is a 3 bit base 8
 * exponent, 13 bit fraction "floating point" number.
 * Units are 1/AHZ seconds.
 */

typedef ushort comp_t;                    /* "floating point" */
                                           /* 13-bit fraction, 3-bit exponent */

struct acct
{
    char    ac_flag;                       /* Accounting flag */
    char    ac_stat;                       /* Exit status */
    uid_t   ac_uid;                        /* Accounting user ID */
    gid_t   ac_gid;                        /* Accounting group ID */
    dev_t   ac_tty;                        /* control typewriter */
    time_t  ac_btime;                      /* Beginning time */
    comp_t  ac_utime;                      /* acctng user time in seconds */
    comp_t  ac_stime;                      /* acctng system time in seconds
 */

```

```

        comp_t  ac_etime;           /* acctng elapsed time in seconds
*/
        comp_t  ac_mem;            /* memory usage */
        comp_t  ac_io;            /* chars transferred */
        comp_t  ac_rw;            /* blocks read or written */
        char    ac_comm[8];       /* command name */
};

#define AFORK  0001              /* has executed fork, but no exec */
#define ASU    0002              /* used super-user privileges */
#define ACOMPAT 0004             /* used compatililty mode */
#define ACORE  0010              /* dumped core */
#define AXSIG  0020              /* killed by signal */
#define ACCTF  0300              /* record type: 00 = acct */

/*
 * 1/AHZ is the granularity of the data encoded in the various
 * comp_t fields. This is not necessarily equal to hz.
 */

#define AHZ 64

```

---

## B.4 The qacct file

The structure of the qacct file can be found in `/usr/include/sys/accrec.h`.

```

/* This is the accounting record used for keeping track of
 * how many pages are charged to each user.
 */
struct acctrec
{
    char from[255];              /* User's name... e.g. dean@jlkkey */
    char acctchar;               /* not used */
    long acctdate;               /* date last job made...not used */
    int pages;                   /* number of pages charged. */
    int numjobs;                 /* number of jobs charged. */
} acctrec;

```

---

## B.5 The cms file

The `acctcms` command can work with two types of command summary files, either containing total cms records or prime/non-prime cms records. The cms files used by the accounting system are of the second type. To work with total cms record formats, you should use the `-t` flag.

```

#define CMDSIZE 9

```

```

/* Total cms records format */
struct tcms {
    char    tcm_comm[CMDSIZE];    /* command name */
    ulong   tcm_pc;               /* number of processes */
    float   tcm_cpu;             /* cpu time(min) */
    float   tcm_real;           /* real time(min) */
    float   tcm_kcore;          /* kcore-minutes */
    ulong   tcm_io;             /* chars transferred */
    ulong   tcm_rw;             /* blocks read */
};
struct tcms    *tcm;

/* prime/nonprime CMS record format */
struct pcms {
    char    pcm_comm[CMDSIZE];    /* command name */
    ulong   pcm_pc[2];           /* number of processes */
    float   pcm_cpu[2];         /* cpu time(min) */
    float   pcm_real[2];       /* real time(min) */
    float   pcm_kcore[2];      /* kcore-minutes */
    float   pcm_io[2];         /* chars transferred */
    float   pcm_rw[2];         /* blocks read */
};

```

---

## Appendix C. Special notices

This publication is intended to help system engineers, IT architects, and consultants understand the capabilities of the AIX operating system in terms of auditing and accounting. The information in this publication is not intended to be the specification of any programming interfaces that are provided by the AIX operating system. See the base documentation of AIX for more information.

References in this publication to IBM products, programs or services does not imply that IBM intends to make these available in all countries in which IBM operates. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only products, programs, or services of IBM may be used. Any functionally equivalent program that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property rights may be used instead of the IBM product, program or service.

Information in this book was developed in conjunction with use of the equipment specified, and is limited in application to those specific hardware and software products and levels.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to the IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive, Armonk, NY 10504-1785.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact IBM Corporation, Dept. 600A, Mail Drop 1329, Somers, NY 10589 USA.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The information contained in this document has not been submitted to any formal IBM test and is distributed AS IS. The use of this information or the implementation of any of these techniques is a customer responsibility and depends on the customer's ability to evaluate and integrate them into the customer's operational environment. While each item may have been reviewed by IBM for accuracy in a specific situation, there is no guarantee that the same or similar results will be obtained elsewhere. Customers

attempting to adapt these techniques to their own environments do so at their own risk.

Any pointers in this publication to external Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of these Web sites.

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States and/or other countries:

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| IBM ®    | Netfinity   |
| PAL      | RACF  |
| Redbooks | Redbooks Logo  |
| RMF      | RS/6000   |
| SPO      | System/39   |
| TCS      |   |

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

Tivoli, Manage. Anything. Anywhere., The Power To Manage., Anything. Anywhere., TME, NetView, Cross-Site, Tivoli Ready, Tivoli Certified, Planet Tivoli, and Tivoli Enterprise are trademarks or registered trademarks of Tivoli Systems Inc., an IBM company, in the United States, other countries, or both. In Denmark, Tivoli is a trademark licensed from Kjøbenhavns Sommer - Tivoli A/S.

C-bus is a trademark of Corollary, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

PC Direct is a trademark of Ziff Communications Company in the United States and/or other countries and is used by IBM Corporation under license.

ActionMedia, LANDesk, MMX, Pentium and ProShare are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries licensed exclusively through The Open Group.

SET, SET Secure Electronic Transaction, and the SET Logo are trademarks owned by SET Secure Electronic Transaction LLC.

Lotus Notes is a registered trademark of Lotus Development Corporation.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.



---

## Appendix D. Related publications

The publications listed in this section are considered particularly suitable for a more detailed discussion of the topics covered in this redbook.

---

### D.1 IBM Redbooks

For information on ordering these publications, see “How to get IBM Redbooks” on page 163.

- *AIX 4.3 Elements of Security Effective and Efficient Implementation*, SG24-5962
- *Understanding IBM RS/6000 Performance and Sizing*, SG24-4810

---

### D.2 IBM Redbooks collections

Redbooks are also available on the following CD-ROMs. Click the CD-ROMs button at [ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks) for information about all the CD-ROMs offered, updates and formats.

| CD-ROM Title  | Collection Kit Number |
|---|-----------------------|
| IBM System/390 Redbooks Collection                        | SK2T-2177             |
| IBM Networking Redbooks Collection                        | SK2T-6022             |
| IBM Transaction Processing and Data Management Collection | SK2T-8038             |
| IBM Lotus Redbooks Collection                             | SK2T-8039             |
| Tivoli Redbooks Collection                                | SK2T-8044             |
| IBM AS/400 Redbooks Collection                            | SK2T-2849             |
| IBM Netfinity Hardware and Software Redbooks Collection   | SK2T-8046             |
| IBM RS/6000 Redbooks Collection                           | SK2T-8043             |
| IBM Application Development Redbooks Collection           | SK2T-8037             |
| IBM Enterprise Storage and Systems Management Solutions   | SK3T-3694             |

---

### D.3 Other resources

These publications are also relevant as further information sources:

- *AIX Version 4.3 Commands Reference*, SBOF-1877

---

## D.4 Referenced Web sites

These Web sites are also relevant information sources:

- Presentation for the UNISOL® JobAcctTM product:  
<http://www.unisol.com>
- Presentation of the CIMS for UNIX product:  
<http://www.cimslab.com/cimsunix.html>
- Presentation of the Coschargeback product: <http://www.coschargeback.com>

---

## How to get IBM Redbooks

This section explains how both customers and IBM employees can find out about IBM Redbooks, redpieces, and CD-ROMs. A form for ordering books and CD-ROMs by fax or e-mail is also provided.

- **Redbooks Web Site** [ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)

Search for, view, download, or order hardcopy/CD-ROM Redbooks from the Redbooks Web site. Also read redpieces and download additional materials (code samples or diskette/CD-ROM images) from this Redbooks site.

Redpieces are Redbooks in progress; not all Redbooks become redpieces and sometimes just a few chapters will be published this way. The intent is to get the information out much quicker than the formal publishing process allows.

- **E-mail Orders**

Send orders by e-mail including information from the IBM Redbooks fax order form to:

|                            | <b>e-mail address</b>   |
|----------------------------|---|
| In United States or Canada | <a href="mailto:pubscan@us.ibm.com">pubscan@us.ibm.com</a>  |
| Outside North America      | Contact information is in the "How to Order" section at this site:<br><a href="http://www.elink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl">http://www.elink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl</a> |

- **Telephone Orders**

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| United States (toll free) | 1-800-879-2755   |
| Canada (toll free)        | 1-800-IBM-4YOU   |
| Outside North America     | Country coordinator phone number is in the "How to Order" section at this site:<br><a href="http://www.elink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl">http://www.elink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl</a> |

- **Fax Orders**

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| United States (toll free) | 1-800-445-9269   |
| Canada                    | 1-403-267-4455   |
| Outside North America     | Fax phone number is in the "How to Order" section at this site:<br><a href="http://www.elink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl">http://www.elink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl</a> |

This information was current at the time of publication, but is continually subject to change. The latest information may be found at the Redbooks Web site.

### IBM Intranet for Employees

IBM employees may register for information on workshops, residencies, and Redbooks by accessing the IBM Intranet Web site at <http://w3.itso.ibm.com/> and clicking the ITSO Mailing List button. Look in the Materials repository for workshops, presentations, papers, and Web pages developed and written by the ITSO technical professionals; click the Additional Materials button. Employees may access MyNews at <http://w3.ibm.com/> for redbook, residency, and workshop announcements.



---

## Abbreviations and acronyms

|              |   |               |   |
|--------------|---|---------------|---|
| <b>ACE</b>   | Access Control Entries                                      | <b>BUMP</b>   | Bring-Up Microprocessor                         |
| <b>ACL</b>   | Access Control List   | <b>C-SPOC</b> | Cluster single point of control                 |
| <b>ADSM</b>  | ADSTAR Distributed Storage Manager                          | <b>CDE</b>    | Common Desktop Environment                      |
| <b>AFS</b>   | Andrew File System  | <b>CDMF</b>   | Commercial Data Masking Facility                |
| <b>AIX</b>   | Advanced Interactive eXecutive                              | <b>CDS</b>    | Cell Directory Service                          |
| <b>APA</b>   | All Points Addressable                                      | <b>CERT</b>   | Computer Emergency Response Team                |
| <b>API</b>   | Application Programming Interface                           | <b>CGI</b>    | Common Gateway Interface                        |
| <b>APPC</b>  | Advanced Program-to-Program                                 | <b>CHAP</b>   | Challenge Handshake Authentication              |
| <b>APPN</b>  | Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking                            | <b>CIDR</b>   | Classless InterDomain Routing                   |
| <b>ARC</b>   | Advanced RISC Computer                                      | <b>CMA</b>    | Concert Multithreaded Architecture              |
| <b>ARPA</b>  | Advanced Research Projects Agency                           | <b>CO</b>     | Central Office                                  |
| <b>ASCII</b> | American National Standard Code for Information Interchange | <b>COPS</b>   | Computer Oracle and Password System             |
| <b>ATE</b>   | Asynchronous Terminal Emulation                             | <b>CPI-C</b>  | Common Programming Interface for Communications |
| <b>ATM</b>   | Asynchronous Transfer Mode                                  | <b>CSNW</b>   | Client Service for NetWare                      |
| <b>AVI</b>   | Audio Video Interleaved                                     | <b>CSR</b>    | Client/Server Runtime                           |
| <b>BDC</b>   | Backup Domain Controller                                    | <b>DAC</b>    | Discretionary Access Controls                   |
| <b>BIND</b>  | Berkeley Internet Name Domain                               | <b>DARPA</b>  | Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency       |
| <b>BNU</b>   | Basic Network Utilities                                     | <b>DASD</b>   | Direct Access Storage Device                    |
| <b>BOS</b>   | Base Operating System                                       | <b>DBM</b>    | Database Management                             |
| <b>BRI</b>   | Basic Rate Interface  | <b>DCE</b>    | Distributed Computing Environment               |
| <b>BSD</b>   | Berkeley Software Distribution                              |               |   |

|              |   |               |  |
|--------------|---|---------------|--|
| <b>DCOM</b>  | Distributed Component Object Model      | <b>FTP</b>    | File Transfer Protocol                           |
| <b>DDE</b>   | Dynamic Data Exchange                   | <b>FtDisk</b> | Fault-Tolerant Disk                              |
| <b>DDNS</b>  | Dynamic Domain Name System              | <b>GDA</b>    | Global Directory Agent                           |
| <b>DES</b>   | Data Encryption Standard                | <b>GDI</b>    | Graphical Device Interface                       |
| <b>DFS</b>   | Distributed File System                 | <b>GDS</b>    | Global Directory Service                         |
| <b>DHCP</b>  | Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol     | <b>GID</b>    | Group Identifier                                 |
| <b>DLC</b>   | Data Link Control                       | <b>GSNW</b>   | Gateway Service for NetWare                      |
| <b>DLL</b>   | Dynamic Load Library                    | <b>GUI</b>    | Graphical User Interface                         |
| <b>DNS</b>   | Domain Name System                      | <b>HACMP</b>  | High Availability Cluster Multiprocessing        |
| <b>DTS</b>   | Distributed Time Service                | <b>HAL</b>    | Hardware Abstraction Layer                       |
| <b>EGID</b>  | Effective Group Identifier              | <b>HCL</b>    | Hardware Compatibility List                      |
| <b>EMS</b>   | Event Management Services               | <b>IBM</b>    | International Business Machines                  |
| <b>EPROM</b> | Erasable Programmable Read-Only         | <b>ICCM</b>   | Inter-Client Conventions Manual                  |
| <b>ERP</b>   | Enterprise Resources Planning           | <b>IDE</b>    | Integrated Drive Electronics                     |
| <b>ESCON</b> | Enterprise System Connection            | <b>IDL</b>    | Interface Definition Language                    |
| <b>ESP</b>   | Encapsulating Security Payload          | <b>IEEE</b>   | Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers |
| <b>EUID</b>  | Effective User Identifier               | <b>IETF</b>   | Internet Engineering Task Force                  |
| <b>FAT</b>   | File Allocation Table                   | <b>IGMP</b>   | Internet Group Management Protocol               |
| <b>FDDI</b>  | Fiber Distributed Data Interface        | <b>IIS</b>    | Internet Information Server                      |
| <b>FIFO</b>  | First In/First Out                      | <b>IMAP</b>   | Internet Message Access Protocol                 |
| <b>FIRST</b> | Forum of Incident Response and Security | <b>IPC</b>    | Interprocess Communication                       |
| <b>FQDN</b>  | Fully Qualified Domain Name             |               |  |
| <b>FSF</b>   | File Storage Facility                   |               |  |

|              |  |              |   |
|--------------|--|--------------|---|
| <b>IPL</b>   | Initial Program Load                                 | <b>LRU</b>   | Least Recently Used                       |
| <b>IPX</b>   | Internetwork Packet<br>eXchange                      | <b>LSA</b>   | Local Security Authority                  |
| <b>ISA</b>   | Industry Standard<br>Architecture                    | <b>LUID</b>  | Login User Identifier                     |
| <b>ISDN</b>  | Integrated Services<br>Digital Network               | <b>LV</b>    | Logical Volume                            |
| <b>ISO</b>   | International<br>Organization for<br>Standardization | <b>LVDD</b>  | Logical Volume Device<br>Driver           |
| <b>ISS</b>   | Interactive Session<br>Support                       | <b>LVM</b>   | Logical Volume<br>Manager                 |
| <b>ITSEC</b> | Initial Technology<br>Security Evaluation            | <b>MBR</b>   | Master Boot Record                        |
| <b>ITSO</b>  | International Technical<br>Support Organization      | <b>MFT</b>   | Master File Table                         |
| <b>ITU</b>   | International<br>Telecommunications<br>Union         | <b>MMC</b>   | Microsoft Management<br>Console           |
| <b>IXC</b>   | Inter Exchange Carrier                               | <b>MOCL</b>  | Managed Object Class<br>Library           |
| <b>JFS</b>   | Journalled File System                               | <b>MPTN</b>  | Multiprotocol Transport<br>Network        |
| <b>JIT</b>   | Just-In-Time   | <b>MSS</b>   | Maximum Segment<br>Size                   |
| <b>LAN</b>   | Local Area Network                                   | <b>MWC</b>   | Mirror Write<br>Consistency               |
| <b>LCN</b>   | Logical Cluster Number                               | <b>NBF</b>   | NetBEUI Frame                             |
| <b>LDAP</b>  | Lightweight Directory<br>Access Protocol             | <b>NBPI</b>  | Number of Bytes per<br>I-node             |
| <b>LFS</b>   | Log File Service<br>(Windows NT)                     | <b>NCP</b>   | NetWare Core Protocol                     |
| <b>LFS</b>   | Logical File System<br>(AIX)                         | <b>NCS</b>   | Network Computing<br>System               |
| <b>LFT</b>   | Low Function Terminal                                | <b>NCSC</b>  | National Computer<br>Security Center      |
| <b>LOS</b>   | Layered Operating<br>System                          | <b>NDIS</b>  | Network Device<br>Interface Specification |
| <b>LP</b>    | Logical Partition                                    | <b>NDS</b>   | NetWare Directory<br>Service              |
| <b>LPC</b>   | Local Procedure Call                                 | <b>NETID</b> | Network Identifier                        |
| <b>LPD</b>   | Line Printer Daemon                                  | <b>NFS</b>   | Network File System                       |
| <b>LPP</b>   | Licensed Program<br>Product                          | <b>NIM</b>   | Network Installation<br>Management        |
|              |  | <b>NIS</b>   | Network Information<br>System             |

|                |  |               |  |
|----------------|--|---------------|--|
| <b>NIST</b>    | National Institute of Standards and Technology | <b>PCI</b>    | Peripheral Component Interconnect                            |
| <b>NLS</b>     | National Language Support                      | <b>PCMCIA</b> | Personal Computer Memory Card                                |
| <b>NNS</b>     | Novell Network Services                        | <b>PDC</b>    | Primary Domain Controller                                    |
| <b>NSAPI</b>   | Netscape Commerce Server's Application         | <b>PDF</b>    | Portable Document Format                                     |
| <b>NTFS</b>    | NT File System                                 | <b>PDT</b>    | Performance Diagnostic Tool                                  |
| <b>NTLDR</b>   | NT Loader                                      | <b>PEX</b>    | PHIGS Extension to X   |
| <b>NTP</b>     | Network Time Protocol                          | <b>PFS</b>    | Physical File System   |
| <b>NTVDM</b>   | NT Virtual DOS Machine                         | <b>PHIGS</b>  | Programmer's Hierarchical Interactive Graphics System        |
| <b>NVRAM</b>   | Non-Volatile Random Access Memory              | <b>PMTU</b>   | Path Maximum Transfer Unit                                   |
| <b>NetBEUI</b> | NetBIOS Extended User Interface                | <b>POP</b>    | Post Office Protocol   |
| <b>NetDDE</b>  | Network Dynamic Data Exchange                  | <b>POSIX</b>  | Portable Operating System Interface for Computer Environment |
| <b>OCS</b>     | On-Chip Sequencer                              | <b>POST</b>   | Power-On Self Test   |
| <b>ODBC</b>    | Open Database Connectivity                     | <b>PP</b>     | Physical Partition   |
| <b>ODM</b>     | Object Data Manager                            | <b>PPP</b>    | Point-to-Point Protocol                                      |
| <b>OLTP</b>    | OnLine Transaction Processing                  | <b>PPTP</b>   | Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol                            |
| <b>ONC</b>     | Open Network Computing                         | <b>PReP</b>   | PowerPC Reference Platform                                   |
| <b>OS</b>      | Operating System                               | <b>PSN</b>    | Program Sector Number  |
| <b>OSF</b>     | Open Software Foundation                       | <b>PSSP</b>   | Parallel System Support Program                              |
| <b>PAL</b>     | Platform Abstract Layer                        | <b>PV</b>     | Physical Volume  |
| <b>PAM</b>     | Pluggable Authentication Module                | <b>PVid</b>   | Physical Volume Identifier                                   |
| <b>PAP</b>     | Password Authentication Protocol               | <b>QoS</b>    | Quality of Service   |
| <b>PBX</b>     | Private Branch Exchange                        | <b>RACF</b>   | Resource Access Control Facility                             |

|              |  |              |   |
|--------------|--|--------------|---|
| <b>RAID</b>  | Redundant Array of Independent Disks   | <b>SP</b>    | System Parallel                         |
| <b>RAS</b>   | Remote Access Service                  | <b>SPX</b>   | Sequenced Packet eXchange               |
| <b>RFC</b>   | Request for Comments                   | <b>SRM</b>   | Security Reference Monitor              |
| <b>RGID</b>  | Real Group Identifier                  | <b>SSA</b>   | Serial Storage Architecture             |
| <b>RMSS</b>  | Reduced-Memory System Simulator        | <b>SSL</b>   | Secure Sockets Layer                    |
| <b>ROLTP</b> | Relative OnLine Transaction Processing | <b>SVC</b>   | Serviceability                          |
| <b>ROS</b>   | Read-Only Storage                      | <b>SWS</b>   | Silly Window Syndrome                   |
| <b>RPC</b>   | Remote Procedure Call                  | <b>TAPI</b>  | Telephone Application Program Interface |
| <b>SAK</b>   | Secure Attention Key                   | <b>TCB</b>   | Trusted Computing Base                  |
| <b>SAM</b>   | Security Account Manager               | <b>TCSEC</b> | Trusted Computer System Evaluation      |
| <b>SATAN</b> | Security Analysis Tool for Auditing    | <b>TDI</b>   | Transport Data Interface                |
| <b>SCSI</b>  | Small Computer System Interface        | <b>TTL</b>   | Time to Live                            |
| <b>SDK</b>   | Software Developer's Kit               | <b>UDP</b>   | User Datagram Protocol                  |
| <b>SFG</b>   | Shared Folders Gateway                 | <b>UID</b>   | User Identifier                         |
| <b>SID</b>   | Security Identifier                    | <b>UMS</b>   | Ultimedia Services                      |
| <b>SLIP</b>  | Serial Line Internet Protocol          | <b>UNC</b>   | Universal Naming Convention             |
| <b>SMB</b>   | Server Message Block                   | <b>UPS</b>   | Uninterruptable Power Supply            |
| <b>SMIT</b>  | System Management Interface Tool       | <b>UTC</b>   | Universal Time Coordinated              |
| <b>SMP</b>   | Symmetric Multiprocessor               | <b>UUCP</b>  | UNIX to UNIX Communication Protocol     |
| <b>SMS</b>   | Systems Management Server              | <b>UUID</b>  | Universally Unique Identifier           |
| <b>SNA</b>   | Systems Network Architecture           | <b>VAX</b>   | Virtual Address eXtension               |
| <b>SNAPI</b> | SNA Interactive Transaction Program    | <b>VCN</b>   | Virtual Cluster Name                    |
| <b>SNMP</b>  | Simple Network Management Protocol     | <b>VFS</b>   | Virtual File System                     |

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>VG</b>      | Volume Group                             |
| <b>VGDA</b>    | Volume Group<br>Descriptor Area          |
| <b>VGSA</b>    | Volume Group Status<br>Area              |
| <b>VGid</b>    | Volume Group Identifier                  |
| <b>VMM</b>     | Virtual Memory<br>Manager                |
| <b>VPD</b>     | Vital Product Data                       |
| <b>VPN</b>     | Virtual Private Network                  |
| <b>VRMF</b>    | Version, Release,<br>Modification, Fix   |
| <b>VSM</b>     | Virtual System<br>Management             |
| <b>W3C</b>     | World Wide Web<br>Consortium             |
| <b>WAN</b>     | Wide Area Network                        |
| <b>WINS</b>    | Windows Internet<br>Name Service         |
| <b>WOW</b>     | Windows-16 on Win32                      |
| <b>WWW</b>     | World Wide Web                           |
| <b>WYSIWYG</b> | What You See Is What<br>You Get          |
| <b>WinMSD</b>  | Windows Microsoft<br>Diagnostics         |
| <b>XCMF</b>    | X/Open Common<br>Management<br>Framework |
| <b>XDM</b>     | X Display Manager                        |
| <b>XDMCP</b>   | X Display Manager<br>Control Protocol    |
| <b>XDR</b>     | eXternal Data<br>Representation          |
| <b>XNS</b>     | XEROX Network<br>Systems                 |
| <b>XPG4</b>    | X/Open Portability<br>Guide              |

---

## Index

### Symbols

# DISK SAMPLES field 97  
# OF PROCS field 97  
# OF SESS field 97  
\$bin 8  
\$G, report format 43  
\$trail 8, 21  
%A, report format 43  
%d, report format 43  
%O, report format 43  
%P, report format 43  
%s, report format 43  
%T, report format 43  
%u, report format 43  
%X, report format 43  
%x, report format 43  
/audit/bin1 8  
/audit/bin2 8  
/audit/stream.out 9  
/audit/trail 9, 33  
/audit/trail.violations 21  
/dev/audit 9  
/etc/acct/holidays 59, 76, 112  
/etc/filesystems 55  
/etc/inittab 14, 51  
/etc/qconfig 56, 73  
/etc/security/audit/bincmds 8, 21  
/etc/security/audit/config 8  
/etc/security/audit/events 36, 43  
/etc/security/audit/objects 12  
/etc/security/audit/streamcmds 9  
/etc/security/envIRON 20  
/etc/utmp 51  
/usr/lib/lpd/pio/etc/pioformat 57  
/usr/sbin/acct/accton 53  
/usr/sbin/auditbin 8  
/var/adm 80  
/var/adm/acct/nite/dacct 55  
/var/adm/acct/sum/rprtdate 104  
/var/adm/dtmp 55, 81  
/var/adm/pacct 53, 54, 58  
/var/adm/qacct 72  
/var/adm/sa/sadd 2  
/var/adm/Spaccti.date 58  
/var/adm/wtmp 51

### A

A\_DETAIL ACCT keyword 125  
A\_OFF ACCT keyword 125  
A\_ON ACCT keyword 125  
A\_VALIDATE ACCT keyword 125  
ac 90  
ac command 80, 90  
access control 35  
access modes 19  
account option of llsummary 127  
accounting 1, 49  
    monthly 63  
    queue accounting 74  
    sizing considerations 106  
Accounting Class Identifier Attribute 113  
Accounting Enable Attribute 113  
accounting files, reading 78  
Accounting Job Charge Value Attribute 114  
accounting master 109, 119  
accounting processes 50  
accounting record 49  
accounting reports 95  
accounting resources 49  
accounting state  
    CLEANUP 63  
    CMS 61  
    CONNECT1 59  
    CONNECT2 60  
    DISK 60  
    FEES 60  
    MERGE 60  
    MERGETACCT 61  
    PROCESS 60  
    QUEUEACCT 60  
    SETUP 58  
    USEREXIT 63  
    WTMPFIX 59  
accounting  
    periods 64  
acct 53  
ACCT keyword 125  
acct\_class\_id 113  
ACCT\_Disable, audit event 144  
acct\_enable 113  
ACCT\_Enable, audit event 144  
acct\_exclude\_enable 114

- acct\_job\_charge 114
- acct\_master 112
- ACCT\_VALIDATION ACCT keyword 126
- acctcms 62, 83, 97
- acctcms command 79, 83
- acctcom 82
- acctcom command 79, 82
- acctcon1 92
- acctcon1 command 59, 79
- acctcon2 92
- acctcon2 command 79
- acctdisk 56
- acctdisk command 79
- acctdusg 56
- acctdusg command 79
- accterr file 102
- acctmerg 102
- acctmerg command 79, 95
- acctmerge command 60
- accton command 79, 80
- acctprc1command 79
- acctprc2 command 60, 79
- acctwtmp 59
- acctwtmp command 79
- aclget command 43
- Action, problem determination 46, 47
- active file 102
- adm 1
- aixterm 52
- allocated option of llsummary 127
- AT\_JobAdd, audit event 149
- At\_JobRemove, audit event 149
- AUD\_Bin\_Def, audit event 144
- AUD\_CONFIG\_WR 30
- AUD\_Events, audit event 144
- AUD\_It, audit event 144
- AUD\_Objects, audit event 144
- AUD\_Proc, audit event 144
- audiselect command 44
- Audit 5
- audit 9
- audit event 9
- audit events 143
- audit off 13
- audit on 13
- audit query 13
- audit record 6
- audit shutdown 13
- audit start 13

- auditb 8
- auditcat 21
- auditing 1
  - concept 5
  - configuration 5
  - interpretation 5
  - setting up 22
  - stream mode 24
  - subsystem 12
- auditing subsystem 5
- auditpr 9, 21
- auditselect 21
- auditstream 9
- avgthroughput option of llsummary 127

## B

- backend command 15
- BACKUP\_Export, audit event 151
- BACKUP\_Priv, audit event 151
- billing periods 50, 76, 117
- BIN mode 5
- bin mode 7
- bin1 8, 15
- bin2 8, 15
- binary mode 5
- BLKIO NPRIME field 96
- BLKIO PRIME field 96
- BLOCKS READ field 84
- bos.acct 65, 110

## C

- c field 40
- cacct 119
- chargefee 1
- chargefee command 79, 81
- CHARS TRNSFD field 84
- check the status audit 13
- CIMS 139
- ckpacct 54, 70, 115
- ckpacct command 79, 82
- class option of llsummary 127
- classes 5, 6
  - cron 16
  - files 16
  - general 16
  - kernel 16
  - lvm 17
  - mail 16

- objects 16
- SRC 16
- svipc 16
- tcpip 16
- CLEANUP state 63
- cmonacct 115
- CMS state 61
- COMMAND NAME field 84
- commands
  - ac 80, 90
  - acctcms 62, 79, 83
  - acctcom 79, 82
  - acctcon1 59, 79
  - acctcon2 79
  - acctdisk 79
  - acctdusg 56, 79
  - acctmerg 79, 95
  - acctmerge 60
  - accton 53, 79, 80
  - acctprc1 79
  - acctprc2 60, 79
  - acctwtmp 79
  - aclget 43
  - audiselect 44
  - audit off 13
  - audit on 13
  - audit query 13
  - audit shutdown 13
  - audit start 13
  - auditpr 35
  - auditselect 21
  - backend 15
  - chargefee 79
  - chargefree 81
  - ckpacct 79, 82
  - cprdaily 121
  - crfs 10
  - diskusg 55, 79
  - dodisk 55, 79, 115
  - enscript 57
  - fwtmp 79, 89
  - init 51
  - last 62, 80, 90
  - lastcomm 80, 83
  - lastlogin 62, 79
  - llq 125
  - llsummary 124
  - lspp 65
  - monacct 58, 64, 79, 115
  - nulladm 68, 79, 103
  - pac 80, 87
  - pclget 43
  - pioformat 57
  - prctmp 79, 93
  - prdaily 63, 79
  - prtacct 79
  - ps 2
  - qdaemon 56
  - remove 79
  - runacct 50, 79
  - sa 80, 85
  - sar 2
  - shutacct 79
  - siteacct 63
  - spacctnd 114
  - spsitenv 110
  - startup 69, 80
  - tail 9
  - tprof 3
  - turnacct 54, 80
  - watch 10
  - who 89
  - wtmpfix 59, 80, 103
- configuration
  - accounting 64
  - bincmds 20
  - events 18
  - objects 19
  - setting up events 24
  - streamcmds file 21
- configuration files 14
- CONNECT NPRIME field 97
- CONNECT PRIME field 96
- CONNECT2 state 60
- connection accounting 92
- COSchargeback 129
- cprdaily command 121
- CPU NPRIME field 96
- CPU PRIME field 96
- CPU utilization 3
- CPU utilization report 3
- crfs command 10
- cron 6
- CRON\_Finish event 5
- CRON\_Finish, audit event 149
- CRON\_JobAdd, audit event 149
- CRON\_JobRemove, audit event 149
- CRON\_Start event 5

CRON\_Start, audit event 149  
crontab files 67  
ctmp 93

## D

data collection 5  
date 52  
day option of llsummary 127  
daycms 121  
decimal integer, report format 43  
DEV\_Change, audit event 149  
DEV\_Configure, audit event 149  
DEV\_Create, audit event 149  
DEV\_Remove, audit event 149  
DEV\_Start, audit event 149  
DEV\_Stop, audit event 149  
DEV\_Unconfigure, audit event 149  
discretionary access control 35  
disk accounting 70  
    SP 117  
DISK BLOCKS field 97  
disk space 47  
DISK state 60  
diskusg 55  
diskusg command 79  
dodisk 55, 72, 115  
dodisk command 79, 115  
DSMIT\_end, audit event 149  
DSMIT\_start, audit event 149  
dtlogin 52  
dtmp 81

## E

e field 40  
ENQUE\_admin, audit event 149  
ENQUE\_exec, audit event 149  
enscript 57  
environment variables  
    MAILCOM 66  
Error Message, problem determination 46, 47  
errors  
    detecting 101  
event  
    auditable 1  
    status 1  
events 5, 10, 18, 24  
exceptions 44  
Exclusive Use Accounting Enabled Attribute 114

## F

FAIL value  
    reports 35  
FAIL\_ACCESS, reports 35  
FAIL\_AUTH, reports 35  
FAIL\_DAC, reports 35  
FAIL\_PRIV, reports 35  
fast more, accounting 55  
fee 81  
FEES field 97  
FEES state 60  
fields 40  
file permissions 103  
FILE\_Accessx, audit event 143  
FILE\_Acl, audit event 145  
FILE\_Chpriv, audit event 145  
FILE\_Close event 10  
FILE\_Close, audit event 144  
FILE\_Dupfd, audit event 145  
FILE\_Facl, audit event 145  
FILE\_Fchmod, audit event 145  
FILE\_Fchown, audit event 145  
FILE\_Fchpriv, audit event 145  
FILE\_Frevoke, audit event 143  
FILE\_Link, audit event 144  
FILE\_Mknod, audit event 145  
FILE\_Mode 43, 44  
FILE\_Mode, audit event 145  
FILE\_Open 44  
FILE\_Open event 10  
FILE\_Open, audit event 144  
FILE\_Owner, audit event 145  
FILE\_Pipe, audit event 145  
FILE\_Privilege, audit event 145  
FILE\_Read 44  
FILE\_Read event 10  
FILE\_Read, audit event 144  
FILE\_Rename, audit event 144  
FILE\_Revoke, audit event 143  
FILE\_Stat, audit event 145  
FILE\_StatAcl, audit event 143  
FILE\_StatPriv, audit event 143  
FILE\_Symlink, audit event 145  
FILE\_Truncate, audit event 145  
FILE\_Unlink 41  
FILE\_Unlink, audit event 144  
FILE\_Utimes, audit event 145  
FILE\_Write event 10  
FILE\_Write, audit event 144

files, configuration 14  
fiscal 58, 101  
fiscrptmm 121  
formats 43  
FS\_Chdir 41, 43, 48  
FS\_Chdir, audit event 145  
FS\_Chroot, audit event 145  
FS\_Extend, audit event 145  
FS\_Fchdir, audit event 145  
FS\_Mkdir, audit event 145  
FS\_Mount, audit event 145  
FS\_Rmdir, audit event 145  
FS\_Umount, audit event 145  
fwtmp 87, 92  
fwtmp command 79, 89

## G

getty 52  
GLOBAL\_HISTORY ACCT keyword 126  
group names, report format 43  
GROUP\_Adms, audit event 148  
GROUP\_Change, audit event 148  
GROUP\_Create, audit event 148  
GROUP\_Remove, audit event 148  
GROUP\_User, audit event 148

## H

halt 52  
hexadecimal integer, report format 43  
HOG FACTOR field 84

## I

idrss resource 123  
init daemon 51  
INSTALLP\_Exec, audit event 149  
INSTALLP\_Inst, audit event 149  
instruction address 3  
integer, report format 43  
interrupt 3  
isrss resource 123  
IT cost allocation 129  
IT cost monitoring 129  
ixrss resource 123

## J

Job Cpu category 126  
JobAcct 133

jobcharge 118  
jobid option of llsummary 127  
jobname option of llsummary 127  
jobrecs 118  
Jobs category 126

## K

KCORE NPRIME field 96  
KCORE PRIME field 96  
kernel 53  
kernel routine 3  
kernel thread 2

## L

l field 40  
last 90  
last command 62, 80, 90  
lastcomm 83  
lastcomm command 80, 83  
lastdate 106  
lastlogin command 62, 79  
lineuse 94  
lineuse file 94  
llacctmrg 124  
llphist 128  
llq command 125  
llsummary 126  
llsummary command 124  
LoadLeveler 109, 122  
loadleveler 122  
log file 102  
log size 54  
LOGIN NAME field 96  
login process 89  
loginlog 100  
loginlog file 100  
lspp command 65  
LVM\_AddLV, audit event 150  
LVM\_AddMissPV, audit event 150  
LVM\_AddPV, audit event 150  
LVM\_AddVGSA, audit event 150  
LVM\_AvoidLV, audit event 150  
LVM\_ChangeLV, audit event 149  
LVM\_ChangeVG, audit event 149  
LVM\_Chg1016, audit event 151  
LVM\_ChgQuorum, audit event 150  
LVM\_DefineVG, audit event 150  
LVM\_DeletePV, audit event 150

LVM\_DeleteVGSA, audit event 150  
LVM\_ExtendLV, audit event 150  
LVM\_KChangeLV, audit event 150  
LVM\_KDeleteLV, audit event 150  
LVM\_KDeleteVG, audit event 150  
LVM\_LockDisk, audit event 151  
LVM\_MissingPV, audit event 150  
LVM\_ReduceLV, audit event 150  
LVM\_RemovePV, audit event 150  
LVM\_SetupVG, audit event 150  
LVM\_UnlockDisk, audit event 151

## M

MAIL\_ToUser, audit event 149  
MAILCOM 66, 78  
MAILCOM variable 114  
master SP accounting files 120  
maxrss resource 123  
maxthroughput option of llsummary 127  
MEAN CPU-MIN field 84  
MEAN SIZE-K field 84  
MERGE state 60  
MERGETACCT state 61  
microprofiling 3  
minthroughput option of llsummary 127  
mode 5  
modes, BIN and STREAM 13  
monacct 78  
monacct command 58, 64, 79, 115  
month option of llsummary 127  
MSG\_Create, audit event 145  
MSG\_Delete, audit event 146  
MSG\_Mode, audit event 146  
MSG\_Owner, audit event 146  
MSG\_Read, audit event 146  
MSG\_Write, audit event 146

## N

nite 58, 91  
nite/cms file 101  
nite/daycms file 101  
nite/lineuse file 101  
nite/reboots file 101  
nite/tmpwtmp 63  
node customization 113  
non-prime hours 117  
nrunacct 115  
nulladm 68

nulladm command 68, 79, 103  
NUMBER CMDS field 84  
numeric option of llsummary 127  
NVRAM\_Config, audit event 149

## O

objects 5, 6, 10  
oconfig file 18  
OK value  
    reports 35  
Oracle database accounting 135  
output  
    understanding 33  
owtmp 92

## P

pac command 80, 87  
pacct 82  
PASSWORD\_Change 48  
PASSWORD\_Change event 5  
PASSWORD\_Change, audit event 148  
PASSWORD\_Check, audit event 148  
PASSWORD\_Flags, audit event 148  
PASSWORD\_Ckerr, audit event 148  
pclget command 43  
performance 1, 48  
periods of accounting 64  
periods, billing 50  
piobe 74, 75  
PORT\_Change, audit event 148  
PORT\_Locked, audit event 147  
prctmp command 79, 93  
prdaily command 63, 79  
prime-time hours 76  
PRINT field 97  
printers, remote 74  
problem determination 45  
PROC\_Adjtime, audit event 143  
PROC\_AuditID, audit event 143  
PROC\_Create 43  
PROC\_Create event 10  
PROC\_Create, audit event 143  
PROC\_Debug, audit event 144  
PROC\_Delete event 10  
PROC\_Delete, audit event 143  
PROC\_Environ, audit event 143  
PROC\_Execute event 10  
PROC\_Execute, audit event 143

PROC\_Kill 41  
 PROC\_Kill, audit event 144  
 PROC\_Limits, audit event 143  
 PROC\_Load, audit event 144  
 PROC\_LoadError, audit event 144  
 PROC\_LoadMember, audit event 144  
 PROC\_Privilege 43  
 PROC\_Privilege, audit event 143  
 PROC\_RealGID, audit event 143  
 PROC\_RealUID, audit event 143  
 PROC\_Reboot, audit event 151  
 PROC\_SetGroups, audit event 144  
 PROC\_setpgid, audit event 144  
 PROC\_SetPri, audit event 143  
 PROC\_Setpri, audit event 143  
 PROC\_SetSignal, audit event 143  
 PROC\_Settimer, audit event 143  
 PROC\_SetUserIDs, audit event 143  
 PROC\_Sysconfig, audit event 144  
 process  
     active 2  
 process accounting 69  
 process ID 3  
 PROCESS state 60  
 prtacct command 79  
 ps 2  
 PSSP 109  
 PSSP, regarding accounting 113

## Q

qacct 56, 87  
 qacct file 87  
 qdaemon 56  
 queue accounting file 73  
 queue accounting, SP 117  
 QUEUEACCT state 60  
 quotas 1

## R

R field 40  
 r field 40  
 RD/WR NPRIME field 96  
 RD/WR PRIME field 96  
 reboot 52  
 reboots 94  
 rembak 57, 74  
 remote administration 52  
 remove command 79

report 100  
 report date files 100  
 reporting  
     ps command 2  
     sar command 2  
     tprof command 3  
 reports  
     auditing 34  
     formats 43  
 Resource accounting 129  
 resource limits 1  
 Resource management 129  
 resource option of llsummary 127  
 resources 49  
 RESTORE\_Import, audit event 151  
 resume audit 13  
 rlogind 52  
 runacct 50, 92, 115  
 runacct command 50, 79  
 runacct script 59, 91

## S

S\_ENVIRON\_WRITE 30  
 S\_GROUP\_WRITE 30  
 S\_LIMITS\_WRITE 30  
 S\_LOGIN\_WRITE 30  
 S\_PASSWD\_READ 30  
 S\_PASSWD\_READ event 20, 39  
 S\_PASSWD\_WRITE 30  
 S\_PASSWD\_WRITE event 20  
 S\_USER\_WRITE 30  
 sa 85  
 sa command 80, 85  
 sar 2  
 security 1  
     policy 1  
 SEM\_Create, audit event 146  
 SEM\_Delete, audit event 146  
 SEM\_Mode, audit event 146  
 SEM\_Op, audit event 146  
 SEM\_Owner, audit event 146  
 SENDMAIL\_Config, audit event 149  
 SENDMAIL\_ToFile, audit event 149  
 services\_config 116  
 setting up auditing 22  
 SHM\_Close, audit event 146  
 SHM\_Create, audit event 146  
 SHM\_Detach, audit event 146

SHM\_Mode, audit event 146  
 SHM\_Open, audit event 146  
 SHM\_Owner, audit event 146  
 shutacct 54  
 shutacct command 79  
 shutdown 13  
 siteacct command 63  
 sizing considerations 47  
 slow mode disk accounting 72  
 slow mode, disk accounting 56  
 SP 109  
 SP accounting 109  
 spacct\_actnode\_thresh 111  
 spacct\_enable 111, 113  
 spacct\_exclude\_enable 112  
 spacctnd command 114  
 spsitenv 110  
 spsitenv command 110  
 SRC\_Addserver, audit event 148  
 SRC\_Addssys, audit event 148  
 SRC\_Chserver, audit event 148  
 SRC\_Chssys, audit event 148  
 SRC\_Delservice, audit event 148  
 SRC\_Delssys, audit event 148  
 SRC\_Start, audit event 148  
 SRC\_Stop, audit event 148  
 ssp.sysman 110  
 stanzas 17  
 starting an audit 10  
 startup 69  
 startup command 80  
 status  
     FAIL 35  
     FAIL\_ACCESS 35  
     FAIL\_AUTH 35  
     FAIL\_DAC 35  
     FAIL\_PRIV 35  
     OK 35  
 Step idrss resource 122  
 Step inblock resource 123  
 Step isrss resource 122  
 Step ixrss resource 122  
 Step majflt resource 122  
 Step maxrss resource 122  
 Step minflt resource 122  
 Step msgrcv resource 123  
 Step msgsnd resource 123  
 Step nivcsw resource 123  
 Step nsignals resource 123

Step nswap resource 123  
 Step nvcswh resource 123  
 Step oublock resource 123  
 Step System Time resource 122  
 Step Total Time resource 122  
 Step User Time resource 122  
 Steps category 126  
 stopping and audit 13  
 STREAM mode 5  
 stream mode 5  
 streamcmds file 21  
 sum 58, 99  
 sum/loginlog file 101  
 summary files 61  
 suspending an audit 13  
 Symptom, problem determination 46, 47  
 SYSCK\_Check, audit event 147  
 SYSCK\_Delete, audit event 147  
 SYSCK\_Install, audit event 147  
 SYSCK\_Update, audit event 147  
 system administrator 1  
 system-wide statistics 3

## T

t field 40  
 tact 49, 95, 99  
 tact files 104  
 tail command 9  
 TCB\_Exec, audit event 144  
 TCB\_Leak, audit event 144  
 TCB\_Mod, audit event 144  
 TCBCK\_Check, audit event 147  
 TCBCK\_Delete, audit event 147  
 TCBCK\_Update, audit event 147  
 TCP\_kaccept, audit event 147  
 TCP\_kbind, audit event 147  
 TCP\_kclose, audit event 147  
 TCP\_kconnect, audit event 147  
 TCP\_klisten, audit event 147  
 TCP\_kreceive, audit event 147  
 TCP\_ksend, audit event 147  
 TCP\_ksetopt, audit event 147  
 TCP\_kshutdown, audit event 147  
 TCP\_ksocket, audit event 147  
 TCP\_ksocketpair, audit event 147  
 TCPIP\_access, audit event 147  
 TCPIP\_config, audit event 146  
 TCPIP\_connect 41, 48

TCPIP\_connect, audit event 146  
TCPIP\_data\_in, audit event 147  
TCPIP\_data\_out, audit event 146  
TCPIP\_host\_id, audit event 146  
TCPIP\_route, audit event 146  
TCPIP\_set\_time, audit event 147  
telnetd 52  
TERM\_Logout, audit event 147  
text string, format 43  
third-party solutions 129  
throughput option of llsummary 127  
TOTAL CPU-MIN field 84  
TOTAL KCOREMIN field 84  
TOTAL REAL-MIN field 84  
tprof 3  
troubleshooting 101  
turnacct 55, 69  
turnacct command 54, 80

## U

UID field 96  
user  
    billing 1, 49  
USER\_Change, audit event 148  
USER\_Check, audit event 148  
USER\_Create, audit event 148  
USER\_Exit, audit event 147  
USER\_Login, audit event 147  
USER\_Logout, audit event 148  
USER\_Reboot, audit event 151  
USER\_Remove, audit event 148  
USER\_SetEnv, audit event 148  
USER\_SetGroups, audit event 148  
USER\_Shell, audit event 151  
USER\_SU 43, 44, 48  
USER\_SU event 5, 39  
USER\_SU, audit event 148  
USEREXIT state 63  
users 5, 6  
users stanza 17  
USRCK\_Error, audit event 148  
utmp 52

## W

watch 10  
Web-based System Manager 26, 65  
Web-based System Management 71  
week option of llsummary 127

who 89  
who command 89  
wsmuser 26  
wtmp 52, 87, 103  
wtmpererror file 102  
wtmpfix 92  
wtmpfix command 59, 80, 103

## X

X11 sessions, remote 52  
xdm 52



---

## IBM Redbooks review

Your feedback is valued by the Redbook authors. In particular we are interested in situations where a Redbook "made the difference" in a task or problem you encountered. Using one of the following methods, **please review the Redbook, addressing value, subject matter, structure, depth and quality as appropriate.**

- Use the online **Contact us** review redbook form found at [ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)
- Fax this form to: USA International Access Code + 1 914 432 8264
- Send your comments in an Internet note to [redbook@us.ibm.com](mailto:redbook@us.ibm.com)

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Document Number</b>   | SG24-6020-00   |
| <b>Redbook Title</b>   | Auditing and Accounting on AIX   |
| <b>Review</b>  | <br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>   |
| <b>What other subjects would you like to see IBM Redbooks address?</b>   | <br><br><br>   |
| <b>Please rate your overall satisfaction:</b>  | <input type="radio"/> Very Good <input type="radio"/> Good <input type="radio"/> Average <input type="radio"/> Poor  |
| <b>Please identify yourself as belonging to one of the following groups:</b>   | <input type="radio"/> Customer <input type="radio"/> Business Partner <input type="radio"/> Solution Developer<br><input type="radio"/> IBM, Lotus or Tivoli Employee<br><input type="radio"/> None of the above |
| <b>Your e-mail address:</b><br>The data you provide here may be used to provide you with information from IBM or our business partners about our products, services or activities. | <input type="checkbox"/> Please do not use the information collected here for future marketing or promotional contacts or other communications beyond the scope of this transaction.                             |
| <b>Questions about IBM's privacy policy?</b>   | The following link explains how we protect your personal information.<br><a href="http://ibm.com/privacy/yourprivacy/">ibm.com/privacy/yourprivacy/</a>  |











# Auditing and Accounting on AIX



**Comprehensive guide to auditing and accounting on your AIX-based system**

**Step-by-step instructions on auditing your system**

**Find the most effective way to use accounting to track system resources**

Auditing and Accounting on AIX is your comprehensive guide to setting up, maintaining, and troubleshooting the advanced auditing and accounting features on your AIX systems. Generously illustrated instructions will guide you through the steps to develop, monitor, troubleshoot, and optimize best practices for auditing and accounting in your environment.

In this redbook, you will find an overview of what auditing and accounting can do for you, how to set up an auditing system, procedures for creating the right accounting system for your environment, and a summary of available third-party accounting systems that will plug into the AIX suite. A chapter specific to SP solutions is provided.

You will also be able to decide how much accounting and auditing you need to do on your system, how to size the subsystems to handle your requirements, and a list of rules of thumb to help prevent common mistakes and fix what may have already gone wrong.

This redbook is useful for system administrators, system security officers, companies needing to bill clients for system resource use, and any others looking for a flexible system to monitor system resources.

**INTERNATIONAL  
TECHNICAL  
SUPPORT  
ORGANIZATION**

**BUILDING TECHNICAL  
INFORMATION BASED ON  
PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE**

IBM Redbooks are developed by the IBM International Technical Support Organization. Experts from IBM, Customers and Partners from around the world create timely technical information based on realistic scenarios. Specific recommendations are provided to help you implement IT solutions more effectively in your environment.

**For more information:  
[ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)**

SG24-6020-00

ISBN 0738418501